

Table of Contents	1
<hr/>	
Introduction	8
Child Safety	16
Child seats . . . . .	.18
Child seat positioning . . . . .	.18
Booster seats . . . . .	.20
Installing child safety seats . . . . .	.22
Installing child safety seats with tether straps . . . . .	.29
Child safety locks . . . . .	.32
Safety Belts	33
Fastening the safety belts . . . . .	.35
Safety belt height adjustment . . . . .	.38
Safety belt warning light and indicator chime . . . . .	.39
Safety belt-minder . . . . .	.39
Child restraint and safety belt maintenance . . . . .	.42
Personal Safety System	43
Supplementary Restraints System	44
Driver and passenger airbags . . . . .	.46
Front passenger sensing system . . . . .	.48
Side airbags . . . . .	.50
Safety canopy curtain airbags . . . . .	.52
Crash sensors and airbag indicator . . . . .	.53
Airbag disposal . . . . .	.61
Keys and Remote Control	62
General information on radio frequencies . . . . .	.62
Remote control . . . . .	.63

Locks	66
Locking and unlocking . . . . .	.66
Trunk release . . . . .	.69
Interior luggage compartment release . . . . .	.71
Security	72
Steering Wheel	73
Adjusting the steering wheel . . . . .	.73
Steering wheel controls . . . . .	.73
Pedals	76
Adjustable pedals . . . . .	.76
Wipers and Washers	77
Windshield wipers . . . . .	.77
Windshield washers . . . . .	.77
Rear-window wiper and washer . . . . .	.78
Lighting	79
Lighting control . . . . .	.79
Instrument lighting dimmer . . . . .	.82
Daytime running lamps . . . . .	.83
Direction indicators . . . . .	.83
Interior lamps . . . . .	.84
Windows and Mirrors	86
Power windows . . . . .	.86
Exterior mirrors . . . . .	.88
Interior mirrors . . . . .	.90
Sun visors . . . . .	.90

Table of Contents 3

Instrument Cluster	91
Gauges . . . . .	.92
Warning lamps and indicators . . . . .	.92
Audible warnings and indicators . . . . .	.96
Information Displays	97
Controls . . . . .	.97
Trip computer . . . . .	.99
Information messages . . . . .	.100
Audio System	106
MyFord™ system . . . . .	.108
Auxiliary input jack . . . . .	.113
USB port . . . . .	.114
Climate Control	115
Manual heating and air conditioning . . . . .	.115
Rear window defroster . . . . .	.116
Cabin air filter . . . . .	.117
Seats	118
Sitting in the correct position . . . . .	.118
Head restraints . . . . .	.119
Manual seats . . . . .	.120
Power seats . . . . .	.121
Rear seats . . . . .	.122
Auxiliary Power Points	124
Storage Compartments	125
Center console . . . . .	.125
Overhead console . . . . .	.126

Starting and Stopping the Engine	127
Ignition switch	128
Starting the engine	128
Engine block heater	130
Fuel and Refueling	132
Fuel quality	133
Running out of fuel.	134
Refueling	135
Fuel consumption	137
Transmission	141
Automatic transmission.	141
All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)	143
All wheel drive	143
Brakes	150
Brakes	150
Hints on driving with anti-lock brakes	151
Parking brake	151
Traction Control	152
Traction Control™	152
Stability Control	153
AdvanceTrac®	154
Parking Aids	155
Sensing system.	155
Rear-view camera system	156
Cruise Control	159
Using cruise control	159

Table of Contents

5

Driving Aids	161
Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) with Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) . . . . .	.161
Steering . . . . .	.166
Load Carrying	168
Cargo management system . . . . .	.168
Roof racks and load carriers . . . . .	.169
Vehicle loading . . . . .	.170
Towing	178
Trailer towing . . . . .	.178
Wrecker towing . . . . .	.182
Recreational towing . . . . .	.183
Driving Hints	184
Economical driving . . . . .	.184
Driving through water . . . . .	.185
Floor mats . . . . .	.186
Roadside Emergencies	188
Getting roadside assistance . . . . .	.188
Hazard warning flashers . . . . .	.189
Fuel cut-off switch . . . . .	.189
Jump-starting the vehicle . . . . .	.190
Customer Assistance	193
Reporting safety defects (U.S. only) . . . . .	.200
Reporting safety defects (Canada only) . . . . .	.200
Fuses	201
Changing a fuse . . . . .	.201
Fuse specification chart . . . . .	.202

Maintenance	211
General information . . . . .	.211
Opening and closing the hood . . . . .	.212
Under hood overview . . . . .	.214
Engine oil dipstick . . . . .	.217
Engine oil check . . . . .	.217
Engine coolant check . . . . .	.218
Automatic transmission fluid check . . . . .	.223
Brake fluid check . . . . .	.225
Power steering fluid check . . . . .	.225
Fuel filter . . . . .	.226
Washer fluid check . . . . .	.226
Changing the vehicle battery . . . . .	.226
Checking the wiper blades . . . . .	.228
Changing the wiper blades . . . . .	.228
Air filter(s) . . . . .	.229
Adjusting the headlamps . . . . .	.231
Changing a bulb . . . . .	.233
Bulb specification chart . . . . .	.242
Vehicle Care	243
Cleaning products . . . . .	.243
Cleaning the exterior . . . . .	.243
Waxing . . . . .	.245
Repairing minor paint damage . . . . .	.245
Cleaning the engine . . . . .	.245
Cleaning the windows and wiper blades . . . . .	.246
Cleaning the interior . . . . .	.246
Cleaning the instrument panel and instrument cluster lens . . . . .	.247
Cleaning leather seats . . . . .	.248
Cleaning the alloy wheels . . . . .	.248
Vehicle storage . . . . .	.249

Table of Contents

7

Wheels and Tires	252
Tire care . . . . .	.255
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) . . . . .	.273
Changing a road wheel . . . . .	.278
Technical specifications . . . . .	.286
Wheel lug nut torque . . . . .	.286
Capacities and Specifications	287
Engine specifications . . . . .	.287
Part numbers . . . . .	.292
Vehicle identification number . . . . .	.293
Vehicle certification label . . . . .	.294
Transmission code designation . . . . .	.294
Ford Extended Service Plan	295
Scheduled Maintenance	298
Normal scheduled maintenance and log . . . . .	.303
SYNC®	317
Pairing your phone for the first time . . . . .	.322
911 Assist™ . . . . .	.336
Vehicle Health Report . . . . .	.339
Appendices	361
Index	369

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2012

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.



WARNING: Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

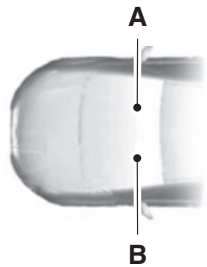
Note: This manual describes a range of product features and options, sometimes before they are generally available. Therefore, you may find options in this manual that are not found on your vehicle.

Note: Some of the illustrations in this manual may be used for different models, so they may appear different than your vehicle. However, the essential information in the illustrations is always correct.

Note: Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as right side or left side, which is determined by the side of the vehicle based on sitting in the seat.



A. Right side

B. Left side

Symbols in this manual

WARNING: You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Symbols on your vehicle

When you see these symbols, read and follow the relevant instructions in this manual before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

**Protecting the Environment**






























You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

SYMBOL GLOSSARY

WARNING: You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
	Safety alert		See Owner's Manual		Anti-lock braking system
	Avoid smoking, flames, or sparks		Battery		Battery acid
	Brake fluid – non petroleum base		Brake system		Cabin air filter
	Check fuel cap		Child Safety Door Lock and Unlock		Child seat lower anchor
	Child seat tether anchor		Cruise control		Do not open when hot

Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
	Engine air filter		Engine coolant		Engine coolant temperature
	Engine oil		Explosive gas		Fan warning
	Fasten safety belt		Front airbag		Front fog lamps
	Fuel pump reset		Fuse compartment		Hazard warning flasher
	Heated rear window		Interior luggage compartment release		Jack
	Lighting control		Low tire pressure warning		Maintain correct fluid level
	Panic alarm		Parking aid system		Parking brake system
	Power steering fluid		Power windows front and rear		Power window lockout
	Service engine soon		Side airbag		Stability control
	Windshield defrost and demist		Windshield washer and wiper		

DATA RECORDING**Service Data Recording**

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, when your vehicle is in for service or repair, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them data for vehicle improvement purposes. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC® Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See the SYNC® chapter for more information.

Event Data Recording

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and**
- **How fast the vehicle was travelling; and**
- **Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.**

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

Note: Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC® or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature. See your SYNC® chapter for more information.

Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information"), only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches that you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. Ford Motor Company and the vendors it uses to provide you with this information do not store your vehicle travel information. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.

CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65



WARNING: Some constituents of engine exhaust, certain vehicle components, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

PERCHLORATE MATERIAL

Note: Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, safety belt pretensioners, and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate for more information.

FORD CREDIT (U.S. ONLY)

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

For your convenience we offer a number of ways to contact us, as well as help manage your account.

Phone: 1-800-727-7000

For more information regarding Ford Credit, as well as access Account Manager, please go to www.fordcredit.com.

SPECIAL NOTICES**New Vehicle Limited Warranty**

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the warranty information that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.



WARNING: Please read the *Supplementary Restraints System* chapter. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

Notice to owners of pickup trucks and utility type vehicles

WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this Owner's Manual carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate your vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

Using your vehicle with a snowplow**Do not use this vehicle for snowplowing.**

Your vehicle is not equipped with a snowplowing package.

Using your vehicle as an ambulance**Do not use this vehicle as an ambulance.**

Your vehicle is not equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.

Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

EXPORT UNIQUE (NON-UNITED STATES/CANADA) VEHICLE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.



WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be purchased separately from the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



WARNING: All children are shaped differently. The recommendations for safety restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from NHTSA and other safety organizations, or are the minimum requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and consulting your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST, contact the NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at <http://www.sfa.ca>, or Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0371 (<http://www.tc.gc.ca>). Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children		
	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children		
	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat back upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the U.S. and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children twelve (12) years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

CHILD SEATS

Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers or children weighing 40 pounds (18 kilograms) or less (generally age four or younger).


CHILD SEAT POSITIONING


! **WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.


! **WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by the vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

! **WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, which may result in serious injury or death.

! **WARNING:** Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.

 **WARNING:** Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

Restraint Type	Child Weight	Use any attachment method as indicated below by X				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)		X			X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 48 lb (21 kg)			X	X	

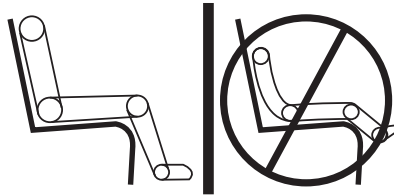
Note: The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See the *Seats* chapter for information on head restraints.

BOOSTER SEATS

WARNING: Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with the vehicle lap/shoulder belt.

Types of Booster Seats



- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap/shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

INSTALLING CHILD SEATS

Using Lap and Shoulder Belts

! **WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. **NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

! **WARNING:** Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.



WARNING: Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place vehicle seat back in upright position.
- For second row seating positions, if needed, the recliner may be adjusted slightly to improve child seat fit. If needed the head restraints may be removed.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. See Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

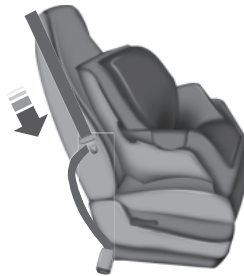
Note: Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.

Note: Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint regarding the necessary and proper use of the Lock-off device. In some instances these devices have been provided only for use in vehicles with safety belt systems that would otherwise require a locking clip. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

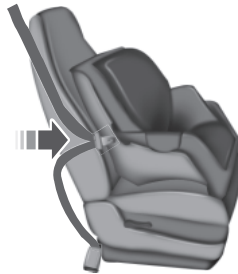


1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.

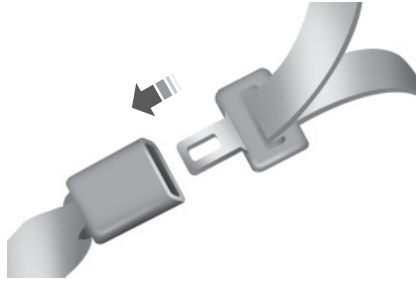
2. After positioning the child safety seat in the proper seating position, do the following:



Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together behind the belt tongue.



3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.

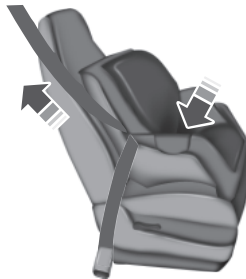
5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, do the following;



Grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

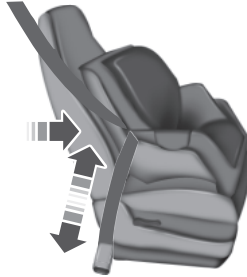
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.



8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness

of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.

9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). See *Using Tether Straps* later in this chapter.



10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.

Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST.

Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)



WARNING: Never attach two child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

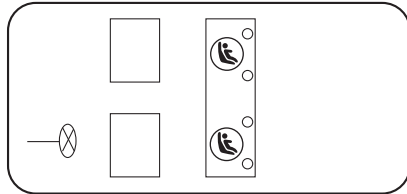


WARNING: Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

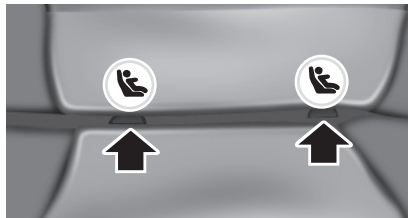
The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two lower anchors located where the vehicle seat back and seat cushion meet (called the seat bight) and one top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat, however the safety belt can still be used to attach the child seat. For

forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat.



Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child seat installation at the seating positions marked with the child seat symbol.



The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seat back below the symbols as shown. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments.

Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps. Refer to *Using Tether Straps* later in this chapter.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

Use of inboard lower anchors from the outboard seating positions (center seating use) (sedan vehicles)

! WARNING: The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in. (28 cm) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row seats are spaced 24 inches (61 cm) apart. The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in. (28 cm) center to center. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child seats (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child seat manufacturer's

instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child seat to any lower anchor if an adjacent child seat is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to the vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

Use of inboard lower anchors from the outboard seating positions (center seating use) (utility vehicles)



WARNING: The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in. (28 cm) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row bench seats are spaced 20.5 inches (52 cm) apart. The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in. (28 cm) center to center. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child seats (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child seat to any lower anchor if an adjacent child seat is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to the vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

Combining Safety Belt and LATCH Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Safety Seats

When used in combination, either the safety belt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat.

USING TETHER STRAPS

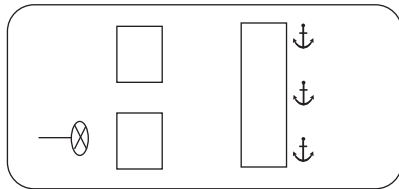


Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats.

Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

Once the child safety seat has been installed using either the safety belt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):



- **Second row seats**

Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat with tether anchors:

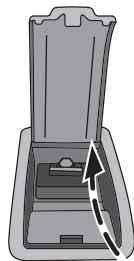
Note: If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off the vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching the vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

Sedan

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat.



2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.



3. Open the tether anchor cover.

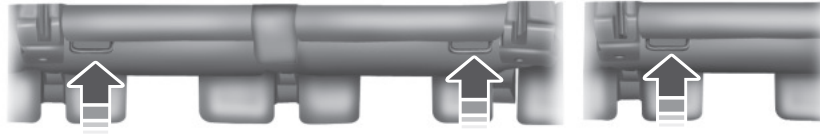


4. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

5. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Utility

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the seat back.



2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected rear seating position:



3. Clip the tether hook to the anchor as shown.

The tether hook may be twisted 1/2 turn to improve installation. If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.

4. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.



The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

- Insert the key and turn to the lock position (key horizontal) to engage the childproof locks.
- Insert the key and turn to the unlock position (key vertical) to disengage the childproof locks.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION



WARNING: Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.



WARNING: Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.



WARNING: All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.



WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.



WARNING: Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.



WARNING: When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.



WARNING: Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.



WARNING: Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

All seating positions in this vehicle have lap and shoulder safety belts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The safety belt system consists of:

- lap and shoulder safety belts
- shoulder safety belt with automatic locking mode, (except driver safety belt)
- height adjuster at the front outboard seating positions
- safety belt pretensioner at the front outboard seating positions
- belt tension sensor at the front outboard passenger seating position.



- Safety belt warning light and chime. See *Safety belt warning light and indicator chime* later in this chapter.

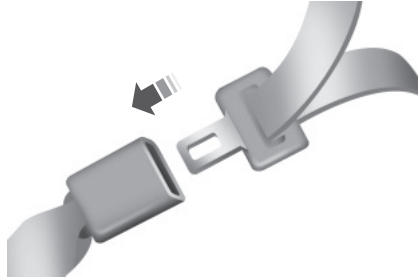


- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See *Crash sensors and airbag indicator* in the *Supplemental Restraint System* chapter.

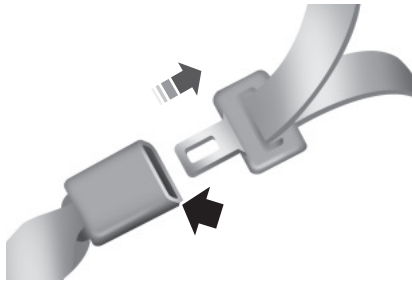
The safety belt pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side collisions, and in rollovers. The safety belt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body when activated. This helps increase the effectiveness of the safety belts. In frontal collisions, the safety belt pretensioners can be activated alone or, if the collision is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

FASTENING THE SAFETY BELTS

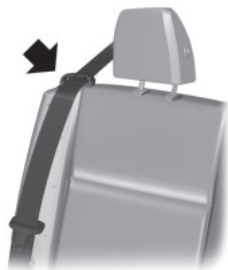
The front outboard and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.



1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.




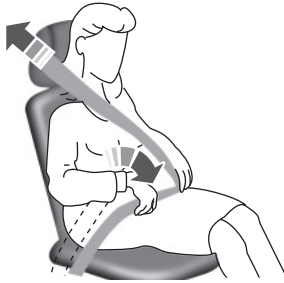
2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.



When in use, the rear safety belts should be placed in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks.


Restraint of Pregnant Women


 **WARNING:** Always ride and drive with your seat back upright and the safety belt properly fastened. The lap portion of the safety belt should fit snug and be positioned low across the hips. The shoulder portion of the safety belt should be positioned across the chest. Pregnant women should also follow this practice. See the following figure.



Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Safety Belt Locking Modes

 **WARNING:** After any vehicle collision, the safety belt system at all passenger seating positions must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the automatic locking retractor feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.

 **WARNING:** BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED if the safety belt assembly automatic locking retractor feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver safety belt has the first type of locking mode, and the front outboard passenger and rear seat safety belts have both types of locking modes described as follows:

Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if the webbing is pulled out too quickly. If this occurs, let the belt retract slightly and pull webbing out again in a slow and controlled manner.

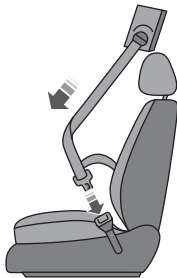
Automatic Locking Mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

When to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

This mode should be used any time a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. See the *Child Safety* chapter.

How to Use the Automatic Locking Mode



1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.

Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

How to Disengage the Automatic Locking Mode

Disconnect the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

Safety Belt Extension Assembly

WARNING: Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, a safety belt extension assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

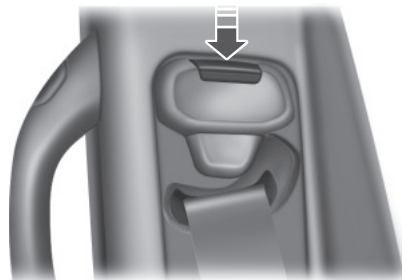
Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

SAFETY BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT**Front seats**

WARNING: Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.



- Sedan



- Utility

Your vehicle has safety belt height adjustments for the front outboard seating positions.

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

Slide the adjuster up to raise the belt and push the button and slide it down to lower the belt.

SAFETY BELT WARNING LIGHT AND INDICATOR CHIME



This lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's safety belt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

Conditions of Operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

SAFETY BELT-MINDER®

This feature supplements the safety belt warning function by providing additional reminders by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning light when the driver's or front passenger's seat is occupied and the safety belt is unbuckled.

The system uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder® feature for objects placed in the front passenger seat, warnings will only be given to front seat occupants as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

If the Belt-Minder® warnings have expired (warnings for approximately five minutes) for one occupant (driver or front passenger), the other occupant can still activate the Belt-Minder® feature.

If...	Then...
The driver's and front passenger's safety belts are buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position or less than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt is not buckled when the vehicle has reached at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt becomes unbuckled for approximately one minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.

Deactivating and Activating the Belt-Minder® Feature

WARNING: While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate/activate the system while driving the vehicle.

Note: The driver and front passenger warning are deactivated and activated independently. When deactivating or activating one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.

Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the deactivation or activation programming procedure.

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- the parking brake is set.
 - the transmission selector lever is in position **P**.
 - the ignition is off.
 - the driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled.
1. Turn the ignition on. **DO NOT START THE ENGINE.**
 2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (approximately one minute).
 - Once the next step is started, the procedure must be completed within 60 seconds.
 3. For the seating position being disabled, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt four times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state.
 - After Step 3, the safety belt warning light will flash for three times as a confirmation
 4. Within approximately seven seconds of the light turning off, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt.
 - This will disable the feature for that seating position if it is currently enabled.
 - This will enable the feature for that seating position if it is currently disabled.

CHILD RESTRAINT AND SAFETY BELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

For proper care of soiled safety belts, see *Cleaning the Interior* in the *Vehicle Care* chapter.

PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM™

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

Your vehicle's Personal Safety System consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front outboard safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors (first row only), and safety belt usage sensors.
- Driver's seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off/on indicator lamp.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints Control Module (RCM) with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and backup tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system, and indicator lights.

How does the Personal Safety System work?

The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of your vehicle's safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the restraints control module. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the safety belt pretensioners and/or either one or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

WARNING: Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.



WARNING: All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.



WARNING: Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints.



WARNING: Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.



WARNING: Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.



WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



WARNING: Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



WARNING: If the airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again and must be replaced immediately. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the safety belts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

Note: You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (e.g., baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic. While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries, such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

SOS POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM™


The system flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag equipped on your vehicle, such as front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy®.


The horn and lamps will turn off when:

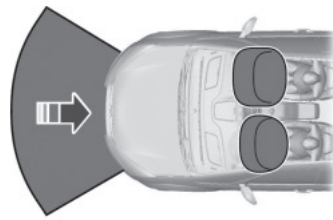
- the hazard control button is pressed
- the panic button (if equipped) is pressed on the remote entry transmitter, or
- the vehicle runs out of power.

46 Supplementary Restraints System

DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS


 **WARNING:** Never place your arm or any objects over an airbag module. Placing your arm over a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries. Objects placed on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.




The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near-frontal collisions.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of the following:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
-  • Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See *Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator* later in this chapter.
- Front passenger sensing system.

Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment

 **WARNING:** National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 centimeters) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.

- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

Children and Airbags



WARNING: Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat.

NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag.

If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.



Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.

Knee airbag system (passenger's side only – if equipped)

The knee airbag is located under the instrument panel. The system works along with the passenger's front airbag to help reduce injury to the legs. When the passenger's airbag activates in a collision, the knee airbag deploys from under the instrument panel.

As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

48 Supplementary Restraints System

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM



WARNING: Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

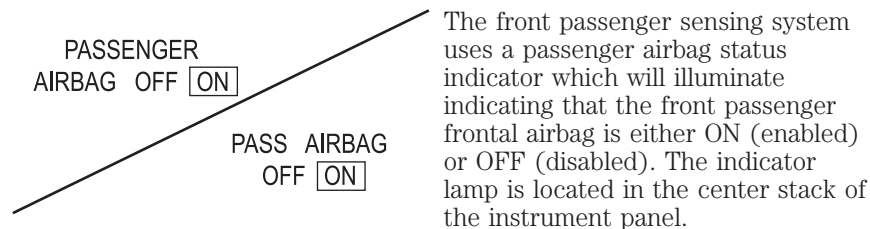


WARNING: Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.



WARNING: Any alteration/modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and safety belt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.



Note: The passenger airbag status indicator OFF and ON lamps will illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is first turned on to confirm it is functional.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator will illuminate the OFF lamp and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.

- If the child restraint has been installed and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the ON lamp, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer’s instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger’s frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the passenger airbag status indicator will illuminate the ON lamp and remain illuminated.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger’s seat, but the passenger airbag status indicator OFF lamp is lit, it is possible that the person isn’t sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person’s legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger’s frontal airbag.
- If the passenger airbag status indicator OFF lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

Occupant	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator	Passenger Airbag
Empty	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Child	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Adult	OFF: Unlit	Enabled
	ON: Lit	

Note: When the passenger airbag status indicator OFF lamp is illuminated, the passenger side airbag (seat mounted) may be disabled to avoid the risk of airbag deployment injuries.

50 Supplementary Restraints System

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it's very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.



In case there is a problem with the front passenger sensing system, the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster will stay lit.

DO NOT attempt to repair or service the system; take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at the phone number shown in the *Getting the services you need* section of the *Customer Assistance* chapter, or see your authorized dealer.

SIDE AIRBAGS



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seat backs (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.



WARNING: Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.



WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seat back.



WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



WARNING: If the side airbag has deployed, **the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.** If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The side airbags are located on the outboard side of the seat backs of the front seats. In certain lateral collisions, the airbag on the side affected by the collision will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact collisions.



The system consists of the following:

- a tag on the seat back indicating that side airbags are found on your vehicle
- side airbags located inside the seat back of the driver and front passenger seats.



- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See *Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator* later in this chapter.


- Front passenger sensing system.


Note: The passenger sensing system will deactivate the passenger seat-mounted side airbag if it detects an empty, unbuckled passenger seat.


The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.


52 Supplementary Restraints System


SAFETY CANOPY® CURTAIN AIRBAGS


 **WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.

 **WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

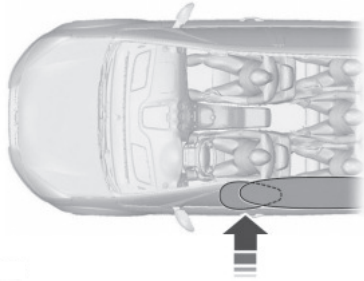
 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the curtain airbags, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing curtain airbags. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS and curtain airbag is provided.

 **WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the curtain airbag.

 **WARNING:** If the curtain airbags have deployed, **the curtain airbags will not function again. The curtain airbags (including the A, B and C pillar trim and headliner) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.** If the curtain airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The Safety Canopy will deploy during significant side collisions or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain lateral collisions or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact collisions and rollover events.



The system consists of the following:

- Safety canopy curtain airbags fitted above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by wording on the B-pillar trim.

- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment.



- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See *Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator* in this chapter.

Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The design and development of the Safety Canopy included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy).

CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR



WARNING: Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

The vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the restraints control module which deploys (activates) the front safety belt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, seat mounted side airbags, and the Safety Canopy®. Based on the type of accident (frontal impact, side impact or rollover) the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

54 **Supplementary Restraints System**

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. See *Warning lamps and indicators* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

The safety belt pretensioners and the airbag supplemental restraint system are designed to activate when the vehicle sustains longitudinal or lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor.

The fact that the safety belt pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- Front airbags are designed to activate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.
- The safety belt pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side collisions, and in rollovers.
- Side airbags are designed to inflate in side-impact collisions, not rollovers, rear impacts, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration.
- The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate in certain side impact collisions or rollover events, not in rear impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration or rollover likelihood.

Airbags and Police Equipment

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment in front of the airbag module cover or in front of the seat areas that may come in contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Dash, tunnel or console-mounted equipment should not be placed outside of the specified zone. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not mount equipment between the side of front seat to the door trim to block deployment of the side airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Dual driver and passenger airbags, side airbags and knee airbags affect the way police equipment can be mounted in police vehicles.

Any surfaces that could come into contact with an airbag, once it has deployed, must not damage the airbag or alter its deployment path.

Once the airbag has fully deployed, any peripheral equipment surfaces that could come into contact with the airbag (such as when the airbag deflates with the loading of an occupant) must not damage the airbag or alter its deployment path. Sharp edges, corners or protrusions could damage the nylon airbag material and reduce the effectiveness of the airbag.

Some approximate dimensions for airbags, at full inflation, are provided in Figures 1 through 5. These dimensions are somewhat flexible and represent free form deployments without the loading of occupants. The shaded areas in Figures 6 through 8 represent available police equipment mounting zones. These zones are shown for police vehicles equipped with standard bucket seats. The zone dimensions provided in Figures 6 through 8 are approximate and will vary with the loading of occupants in the seats.

All airbag and equipment mounting zone dimensions are approximate due to different airbag deployment characteristics.

56 Supplementary Restraints System

No equipment will mount between the side of the front seat and the door trim to block deployment of the side airbag.

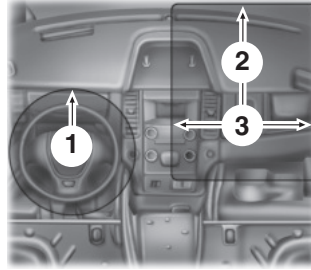


Figure 1 - Sedan

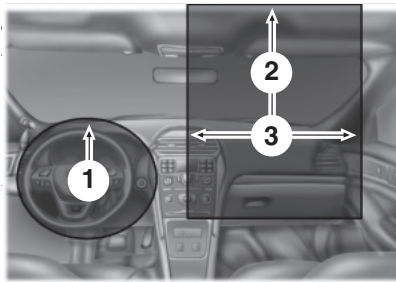


Figure 1 - Utility

1. **Sedan:** 13 inches (330 mm) from center of emblem; **utility:** 9.5 inches (240 mm) from center of emblem
2. **Sedan:** 13.2 inches (335 mm) from center of airbag door; **utility:** 13.8 inches (350 mm) from center of airbag door
3. **Sedan:** 29.5 inches (750 mm); **utility:** 28.3 inches (720 mm)

No objects should be placed between the airbags due to airbag variability.

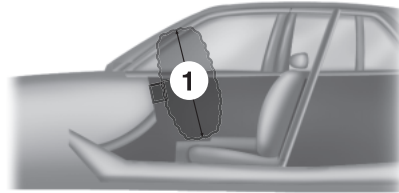


Figure 2

1. **Sedan:** 29.9 inches (760 mm); **utility:** 27.5 inches (700 mm)

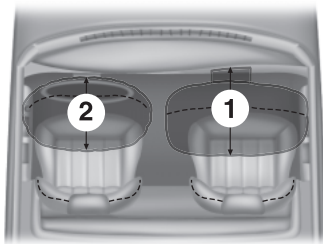


Figure 3

Note: No objects should be placed between the driver side steering wheel airbag and the passenger side dash airbag.

1. Front passenger airbag – **sedan:** 27.5 inches (700 mm); **utility:** 22.8 inches (580 mm)

2. Front driver – 17 inches (430 mm)

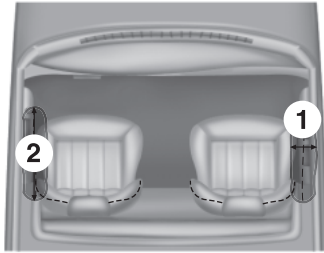


Figure 4 (if equipped)

1. From outboard side of seat – **sedan:** 6 inches (152 mm); **utility:** 8 inches (200 mm)
2. Forward of seat back – **sedan:** 14 inches (356 mm); **utility:** 15 inches (380 mm)

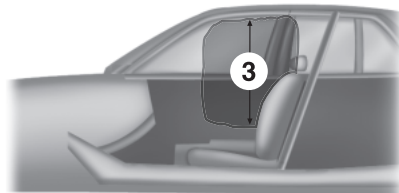


Figure 5 (if equipped)



WARNING: The partition and the installation hardware of the partition must not interfere with the operation and deployment of the roll over curtain air bags and seat side air bags. Failure to follow these instructions may cause personal injury.

3. Up from side airbag module – **sedan:** 16 inches (406 mm); **utility:** 27.5 inches (700 mm)

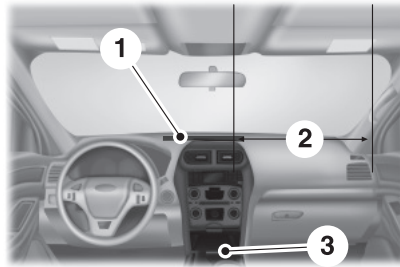


Figure 6 - Sedan

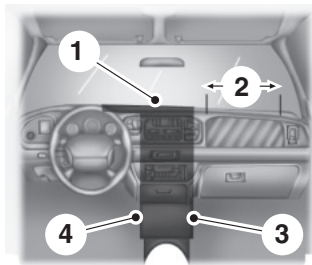


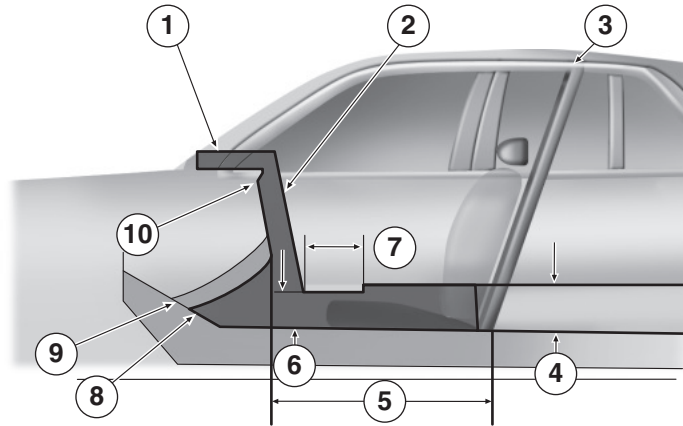
Figure 6 - Utility

1. Area on top of the instrument panel (**Note:** Equipment must not interfere with driver visibility)

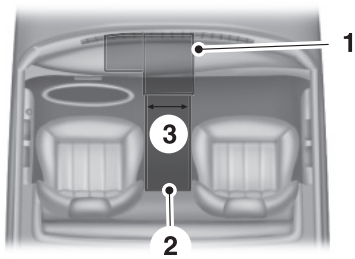
2. Airbag door must be kept clear for deployment of the airbag

3. **Sedan:** Area in front of electronic finish panel from the bottom of the ashtray to the top of the instrument panel; **utility:** Area in front of center console from the bottom of the ashtray to the top of the instrument panel

4. **Utility:** Area in front of electronic finish panel from the bottom to the top of the instrument panel

**Figure 7**

1. Area on top of instrument panel
2. Area in front of center console from tunnel up to instrument panel
3. Prisoner screen (reference only)
4. 10 inches (254 mm)
5. Area on tunnel between seats
6. Height: 8.5 inches (216 mm)
7. 12 inches (305 mm)
8. Area on tunnel beneath center console
9. Tunnel
10. Depth: 1.5 inches (38 mm)

**Figure 8**

1. Area on top of the instrument panel.

Note: Equipment must not interfere with driver visibility.

2. Area on tunnel between seats

3. 9 inches (229 mm)

AIRBAG DISPOSAL

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags **MUST BE** disposed of by qualified personnel.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Keys with the keyed alike feature (if equipped) allow:

- Use of different keys (keyed alike) for a specific vehicle.
- Key lock/unlock operation of the front doors and trunk/liftgate.

The remote control (if equipped) allows you to:

- Remotely lock or unlock the vehicle doors.
- Remotely open the trunk (sedan only).
- Arm and disarm the anti-theft system (if equipped).
- Activate the panic alarm.

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term **IC** before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). Vehicles with the remote start feature will have a greater range. A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions (e.g. amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems). If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

Note: If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.

REMOTE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)



If there are problems with the remote entry system, make sure to take all remote entry transmitters with you to the authorized dealer in order to aid in troubleshooting the problem.

Replacing the Battery

Note: Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

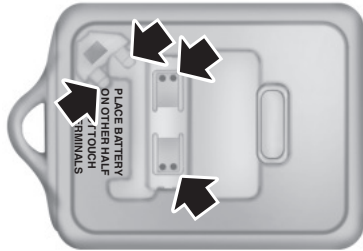
Note: Replacing the battery will not delete the remote control from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally after battery replacement.

The remote entry transmitter uses one coin type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

To replace the battery:



1. Twist a thin coin between the two halves of the remote entry transmitter near the key ring. **Note:** Do not take the rubber cover and circuit board off the front housing of the remote entry transmitter.



2. Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals on the back surface of the circuit board.

3. Remove the old battery.

4. Insert the new battery. Refer to the diagram inside the remote entry transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to ensure that the battery is fully seated in the battery housing cavity.

5. Snap the two halves back together.

Replacing Lost Remote Entry Transmitters

If you would like to have your remote entry transmitter reprogrammed because you lost one, or would like to buy additional remote entry transmitters, you can either reprogram them yourself, or take all remote entry transmitters to your authorized dealer for reprogramming.

How to Reprogram Your Remote Entry Transmitters

You must have all remote entry transmitters (maximum of four) available before beginning this procedure. **Note:** Do not press the brake pedal at any time during this procedure. If the brake pedal is pressed at any time during this procedure, programming mode will be exited and the entire procedure must be repeated.

Note: Ensure the brake pedal is not pressed during this sequence.

To reprogram the remote entry transmitters:

1. Make sure the vehicle is electronically unlocked.
2. Put the key in the ignition.
3. Cycle eight times rapidly (within 10 seconds) between the off and on positions. **Note:** The eighth turn must end in the on position.
4. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been activated.

5. Within 20 seconds press any button on the remote entry transmitter.
Note: If more than 20 seconds have passed you will need to start the procedure over again.
6. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that this remote entry transmitter has been programmed.
7. Repeat Step 5 to program each additional remote entry transmitter.
8. Turn the ignition to the off position after you have finished programming all of the remote entry transmitters. **Note:** After 20 seconds, you will automatically exit the programming mode.
9. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been exited.

Car Finder

Note: This feature will not work with Dark Car feature.



Press the button twice within three seconds. The horn will chirp and the turn signals will flash. It is recommended that this method be used to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

Sounding a Panic Alarm (Utility Only)

Note: The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is off.



Press the button to activate the alarm. Press the button again or turn the ignition on to deactivate.

Replacement Keys

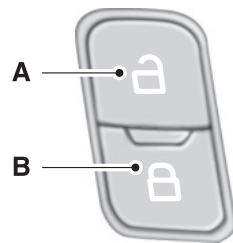
If your keys are lost or stolen and you don't have an extra key, see your authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock the vehicle.

Power Door Locks (If Equipped)

The power door lock control is located on the driver and front passenger door panels.



A. Unlock

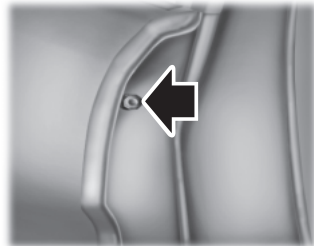
B. Lock

Hidden Rear Door Locks (If Equipped)

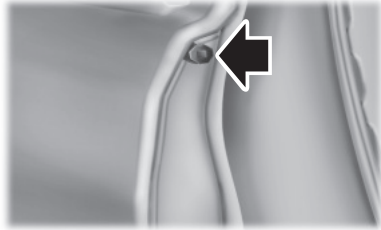
The rear doors can be manually locked/unlocked using the hidden lock knob on the inside front edge of the rear doors. Open the front doors to access the lock knob.

Pull the knob to unlock and push the knob to lock.

Sedan



Utility

**Remote Control**

The remote control can be used anytime the vehicle is not running.

Note: If equipped with Dark Car feature, the turn signals will not flash and the horn will not sound when unlocking or locking the vehicle.

Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)

Press the button to unlock the driver's door.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The turn signals will flash.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking. Disabling two-stage unlocking allows all vehicle doors to unlock with one press of the button. The turn signals will flash twice to indicate the unlocking mode was changed.

Locking the Doors

Press the button to lock all the doors. The turn signals will illuminate.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, the horn will chirp and the turn signals will illuminate if all the doors and the liftgate/trunk are closed.

Note: If any door or the liftgate/trunk is not closed, or if the hood is not closed on vehicles equipped with an anti-theft alarm, the horn will chirp twice and the lamps will not flash.

Opening the Trunk (Sedan Only)

Press the button twice within three seconds to open the trunk.

Make sure the trunk is closed and latched before driving your vehicle. An unlatched trunk may cause objects to fall out or block the driver's rear view.

Smart Locks (If Equipped)

This feature helps to prevent you from locking yourself out of the vehicle if your key is still in the ignition.

When you open one of the front doors and you lock the vehicle with the power door lock control (on the driver or passenger door trim panel), all the doors will lock, then all doors will automatically unlock reminding you that your key is still in the ignition.

The vehicle can still be locked, with the key in the ignition, by locking the driver's door with a key or using the lock control on the remote control.

If both front doors and the liftgate are closed, the vehicle can be locked from any method, regardless of whether the key is in the ignition or not.

Illuminated Entry (If Equipped)

The interior lamps and parking lamps will illuminate when the remote control is used to unlock the door(s) or when any door is opened.

The illuminated entry system will turn off the lights if:

- the ignition is turned to the on position,
- the remote control lock button is pressed,
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

The interior lights will not turn off if:

- they have been turned on with the dimmer control, or
- any door is open.

Illuminated Exit (If Equipped)

- When all vehicle doors are closed and the key is removed from the ignition, the interior lamps will illuminate.

The lamps will turn off if all the doors remain closed and

- 25 seconds elapse, or
- the key is inserted in the ignition.

Battery Saver

The battery saver will shut off the lamps 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off.

- If the dome lamps were turned on using the panel dimmer control, the battery saver will shut them off 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off.
- If the courtesy lamps were turned on because one of the vehicle doors or the trunk or liftgate was opened, the battery saver will shut them off 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off.
- The battery saver will shut off the headlamps 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off.

TRUNK RELEASE (SEDAN)

To open the trunk with the key, use the key in the trunk lock cylinder to open.



To open the trunk with the instrument panel button: press the button located on the instrument panel.

The trunk release can be configured to work with the ignition in any position or when the ignition is on only. See your authorized dealer to change the configuration.

LIFTGATE (UTILITY)

WARNING: Make sure that the liftgate is closed to prevent exhaust fumes from being drawn into the vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate door open, keep the vehicle well ventilated so outside air comes into the vehicle.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

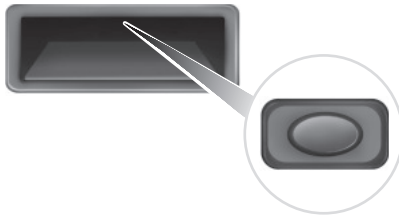
Note: Do not hang anything (bike rack, etc.) from the spoiler, glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure the liftgate is closed and latched before driving your vehicle. An unlatched liftgate may cause objects to fall out or block the driver's rear view.

The liftgate area is only intended for cargo, not passengers.

Open the liftgate using the outside button if the vehicle is unlocked or use the key when the vehicle is locked.





Outside button: Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, then pull on the outside handle.



Key: Insert the key into the key cylinder and turn clockwise. Hold in this position and pull on the liftgate handle to open the liftgate.

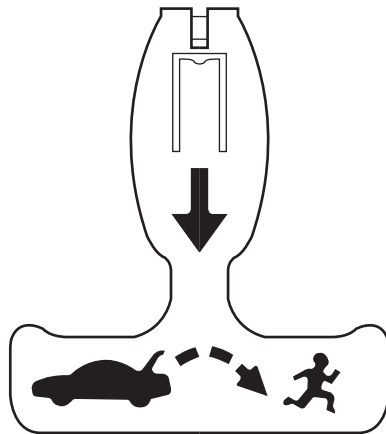
INTERIOR LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT RELEASE (SEDAN)

 **WARNING:** Keep vehicle doors and luggage compartment locked and keep keys and remote transmitters out of a child's reach. Unsupervised children could lock themselves in the trunk and risk injury. Children should be taught not to play in vehicles.

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or animals unattended in the vehicle. On hot days, the temperature in the trunk or vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat-related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Your vehicle is equipped with a release handle that provides a means of escape for children and adults if they become locked inside the luggage compartment.

Adults should familiarize themselves with the operation and location of the release handle.



The handle is located inside the luggage compartment either on the luggage compartment door (lid) or near the tail lamps. It is composed of a material that will glow for hours in darkness following brief exposure to ambient light.

Pull the handle and push up on the luggage compartment door (lid) to open from within the luggage compartment.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM (IF EQUIPPED)

The system will warn you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. It will be triggered if any door, the luggage compartment or the hood is opened without using the key or the remote control.

The park and turn lamps will flash and the horn will sound if unauthorized entry is attempted while the alarm is armed.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in the ignition. Lock the vehicle to arm the alarm.

Disarming the Alarm

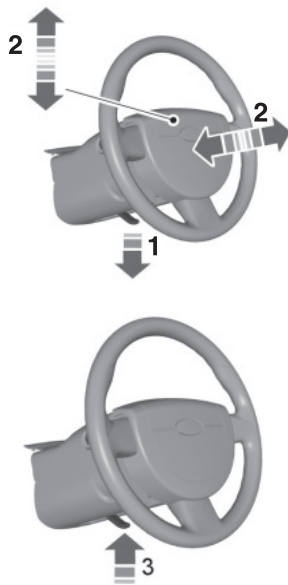
Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Turn the ignition on or start the vehicle.
- Use a key in the driver's door to unlock the vehicle, then turn the ignition on within 12 seconds.

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

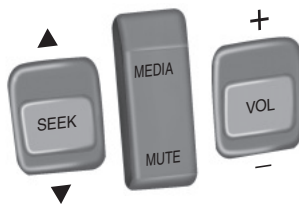
Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. Refer to *Sitting In the Correct Position* in the *Seats* chapter.



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.

Note: The telescope adjustment feature is only available on the sedan.

3. Lock the steering column.

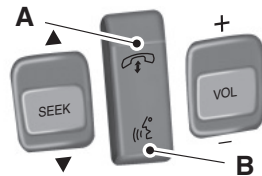
AUDIO CONTROL

SEEK: Press to select the next or previous stored preset or track. Press and hold to select the next or previous frequency or seek through a track.

MEDIA: Press repeatedly to scroll through available audio modes.

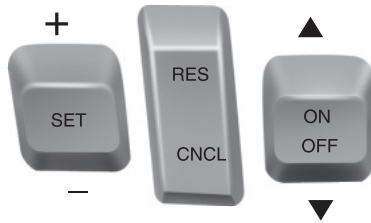
MUTE: Press to silence the radio.

VOL (Volume): Press to increase or decrease the volume.

VOICE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

- A. Phone mode
- B. Voice recognition

Refer to the *SYNC* chapter.

CRUISE CONTROL

Refer to the *Cruise Control* chapter for information on this feature.

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL

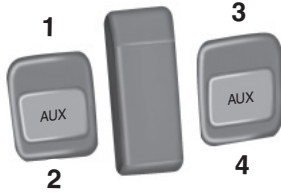
Refer to the *Information Displays* chapter for more information.

Cluster Display Control Features



This control functions the same as the center control on the faceplate. Refer to the *Audio System* chapter.

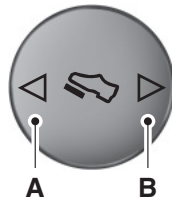
CONFIGURABLE STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)



The steering wheel controls can be configured to operate frequently used equipment. A graphic in the information display will show when an auxiliary switch is activated.

ADJUSTABLE PEDALS

WARNING: Never adjust the accelerator and brake pedal with feet on the pedals while the vehicle is moving.



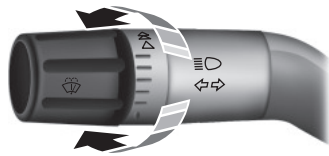
- A. Farther
- B. Closer

The control is located on the left side of the steering column. Press and hold the appropriate control to move the pedals.

The pedals should only be adjusted when the vehicle is parked.

WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Note: Fully defrost the windshield in icy conditions before turning on the windshield wipers.



Rotate the end of the control away from you to increase the speed of the wipers. Rotate toward you to decrease the speed of the wipers.

Speed Dependent Wipers (Utility Only)

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes will decrease when intermittent wipe is selected.

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washer before wiping a dry windshield.

Note: Do not operate the washer when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.



Press the end of the stalk to activate the washer.

- A brief press causes a single wipe without washer fluid.
- A quick press and hold causes the wipers to swipe three times with washer fluid.
- A long press and hold will activate the wipers and washer fluid for up to 10 seconds.

A wipe will occur a few seconds after washing to clear any remaining washer fluid. This feature can be turned on and off in the information display.

REAR-WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS (UTILITY ONLY)

Rotate the control to the desired position. Select:

2 — Intermittent operation (shortest pause between wipes).

1 — Intermittent operation (longest pause between wipes).

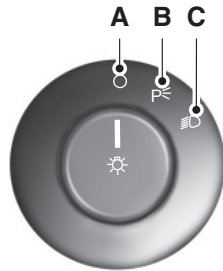
0 — Off.

Rotate and hold the control to either the top or bottom position to activate the rear washer. The control will return to the **2** or **0** position when you release it.

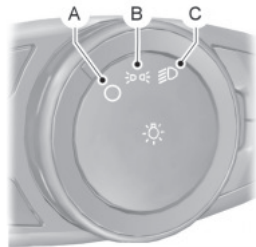
When you select reverse gear, the rear wiper will switch on to intermittent if the front wipers are activated. This feature may be enabled or disabled in the information display.

LIGHTING CONTROL

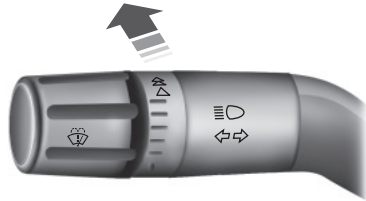
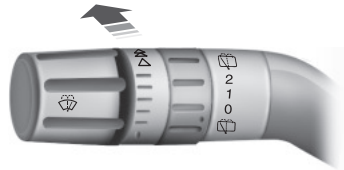
Sedan



Utility

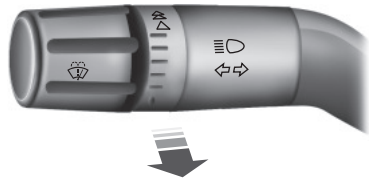


- A. Off
- B. Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.
- C. Headlamps

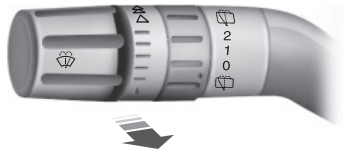
High Beams
Sedan**Utility**

- Push the lever toward the instrument panel to switch the high beams on.
- Push the lever toward the instrument panel again or pull the lever towards you to switch the high beams off.

**Headlamp Flasher
Sedan**

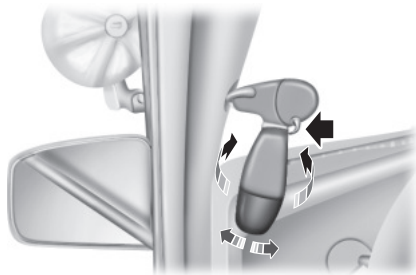


Utility



Pull toward you slightly to activate and release to deactivate.

SPOT LIGHT CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)



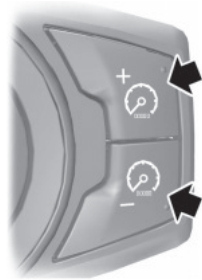
- Use the switch on the chrome handle to turn the spot light on and off.
- Rotate and twist the handle to adjust the position of the spot light.

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER**Sedan**

- Press repeatedly or press and hold until the desired level is reached.
- If the vehicle is not equipped with the Dark Car feature, press and hold the top of the control to activate the “dome on” feature. This will

turn on the interior courtesy lights. Press and hold the bottom of the control to turn off the interior courtesy lights.


- If equipped with the Dark Car feature, courtesy illumination is disabled. Press and hold the bottom of the control to turn off the instrument cluster lights and the information display lights.

Utility

- Press repeatedly or press and hold the top control to brighten the instrument cluster and information display lighting.
- Press repeatedly or press and hold the bottom control to dim the instrument cluster and information display lighting. If equipped with the Dark Car feature, you may turn off the instrument cluster and information display lighting.

Note: If the battery is disconnected, discharged, or a new battery is installed, the dimmer will set the illuminated components to the maximum setting automatically.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)

 **WARNING:** Always remember to turn on your headlamps at dusk or during inclement weather. The Daytime Running Lamp (DRL) system does not activate the tail lamps and generally may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

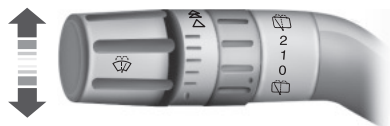
The system turns the headlamps on with a reduced output.

To activate:

- the ignition must be in the on position and
- the lighting control is in the off, autolamp, or parking lamp position.
- the transmission is not in P (Park).

DIRECTION INDICATORS

The turn signal lever does not mechanically lock in the upward or downward position when activated.

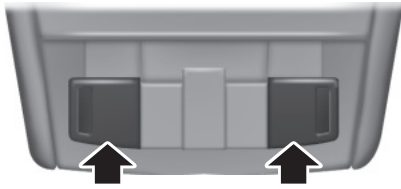
Sedan**Utility**

- Push down to activate the left turn signal.
- Push up to activate the right turn signal.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash only three times to indicate a lane change.

INTERIOR LAMPS**Dome Lamp Control (Utility)**

Press the control to switch on the interior courtesy lights. The lights will remain on until the control is pressed again.

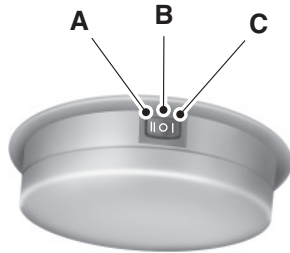
Front Row Map Lamps (If Equipped)

The front row map lamp lights when:

- any door is opened.
- the dome lamp button on the instrument panel is activated (Utility).
- the instrument panel dimmer button is pressed until the courtesy lamp comes on (Sedan).
- the remote entry controls are pressed and the ignition is off.

To manually turn on the map lamps, press the outer edge of the clear lens.

Note: If equipped with Dark Car feature, courtesy illumination is disabled.

Dome Task Lamp (If Equipped)

- A. Night-vision red light on
- B. OFF position
- C. White light on

The police vehicle may be equipped with one or two red/white dome task lamps. The lamp may be located in the headliner between the driver and front seat passenger. The lamp may be located in the headliner at the rear of the vehicle.

Note: Always remember to return the dome lamp switch to the OFF position when finished to prevent discharging the vehicle battery.

Third Row Cargo Lamp (Utility)

The cargo lamp can also be turned on and off manually by pressing the control switch.

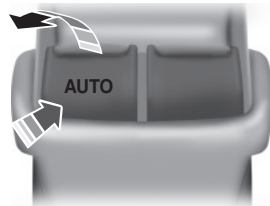
Note: Always remember to switch off the lamp (press the control switch) when finished to prevent discharging the vehicle battery.

POWER WINDOWS

WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press or lift the switches to operate the windows.

- Press the switch to the first detent and hold to open the window.
- Lift the switch to the first detent and hold to close the window.

Rear Window Buffeting

You may hear a wind throb or buffeting noise when one or both of the rear windows are open. This noise can be reduced by lowering a front window approximately 2–3 inches (5–8 centimeters).

One-Touch Down (Driver's Window, Utility Only)

This feature automatically opens the window.

Press the switch completely down and release. The window will open fully. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

One-Touch Up or Down (Driver's Window, Sedan Only)

This feature automatically opens or closes the window.

Press or lift the switch completely and release. The window will fully open or close. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

Bounce-Back

The window will stop automatically while closing and reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

Pull up the window switch and hold within two seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window will travel up with no bounce-back protection. The window will stop if the switch is released before the window is fully closed.

Window Lock



Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls (if equipped).

Accessory Delay

You can use the window switches for several minutes after you switch the ignition off, or until either front door is opened.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS**Power Exterior Mirrors**

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.



- A. Left mirror
- B. Adjustment control
- C. Right mirror

1. Press the button to select the mirror you want to adjust. An indicator light on the button will illuminate.
2. Use the adjustment control to adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror button again to deselect the mirror. The indicator light will turn off.

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Heated Exterior Mirror (If Equipped, Sedan Only)

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.

Note: Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

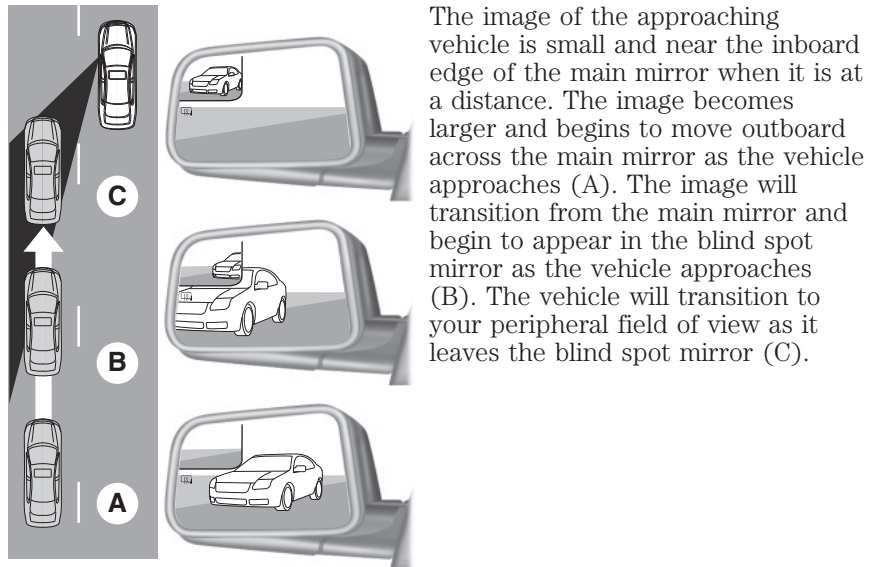
Both mirrors are heated automatically to remove ice, mist and fog when the rear window defrost is activated.

Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors (If Equipped)

WARNING: Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They are designed to assist you by increasing visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you are going to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear, and carefully change lanes.



The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle will transition to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

Blind Spot Information System (BLIS®) with Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) (If Equipped)

Refer to *Blind Spot Information System (BLIS®) with Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)* in the *Driving Aids* chapter.

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia based cleaning products.

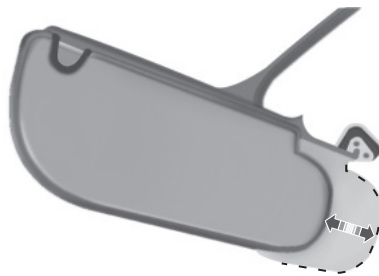
You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

Note: Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

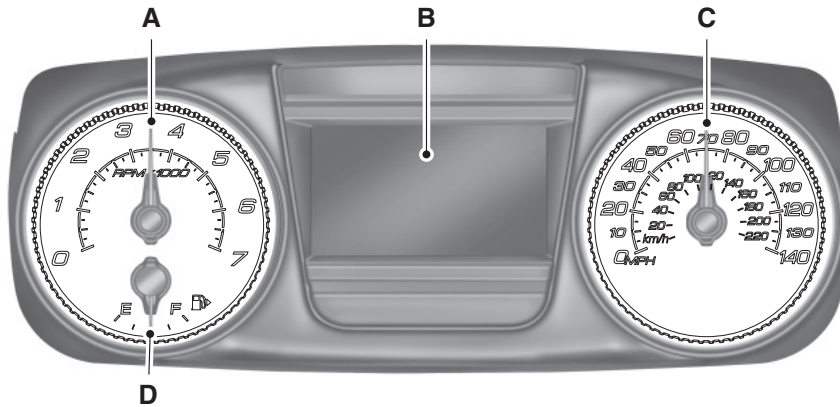
SUN VISORS**Slide-On-Rod**

Rotate the visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra sunlight coverage.

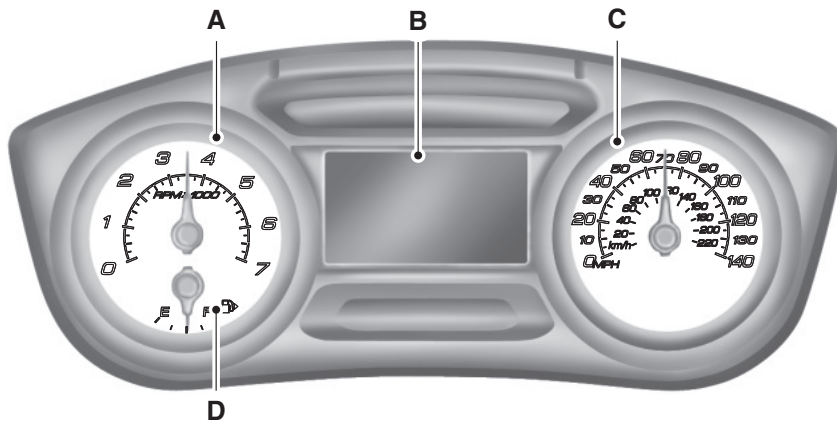
Retract the visor before moving it back toward the windshield and storing it.

GAUGES

Sedan cluster shown in standard measure – optional and metric clusters similar.



Utility cluster shown in standard measure – optional and metric clusters similar.



- A. Tachometer
- B. Information display. See *Information displays* for more information.
- C. Speedometer
- D. Fuel gauge

Speedometer

The vehicle is shipped with a certified speedometer. If your local procedures require calibration, utilize the distance per time on-road test. If a dynamometer calibration is required, reference the calibration procedure found at www.Fleet.Ford.com or check OASIS for updated information.

Fuel gauge

Indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank (when the ignition is on). The fuel gauge may vary slightly when the vehicle is in motion or on a grade. The fuel icon and arrow indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

These indicators can alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious enough to cause expensive repairs. Many lights will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any light remains on after starting the vehicle, refer to the respective system warning light for additional information.

Note: Some warning indicators are reconfigurable telltales (RTT). These indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning light, but do not display on startup.

Stability Control System

Displays when the AdvanceTrac®/Traction control is active. If the light remains on, have the system serviced immediately.

Stability Control System Off

Illuminates when AdvanceTrac®/Traction control has been disabled by the driver.

Airbag readiness

If this light fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned on, continues to flash or remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. A chime will sound when there is a malfunction in the indicator light.

Anti-lock brake system

If the ABS light stays illuminated or continues to flash, a malfunction has been detected. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Normal braking is still functional unless the brake warning light also is illuminated.

Brake system warning light

To confirm the brake system warning light is functional, it will momentarily illuminate when the ignition is turned to the on position when the engine is not running, or in a position between on and start, or by applying the parking brake when the ignition is turned to the on position.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have the system checked immediately by your authorized dealer.



WARNING: Driving a vehicle with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop the vehicle. Have the vehicle checked by your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Charging system (RTT)

Illuminates when the battery is not charging properly. If it stays on while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction with the charging system. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. This indicates a problem with the electrical system or a related component.

Door ajar (RTT)

Displays when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

Engine oil pressure (RTT)

Illuminates when the oil pressure falls below the normal range.

Engine coolant temperature (RTT)

Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool.

High beams

Illuminates when the high-beam headlamps are on.

Low fuel (RTT)

Illuminates when the fuel level in the fuel tank is at or near empty.

Low tire pressure warning

Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the light remains on at start up or while driving, the tire pressure should be checked. When the ignition is first turned to on, the light will illuminate for 3 seconds to ensure the bulb is working. If the light does not turn on or begins to flash, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Low washer fluid (RTT)

Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

Park lamps

Illuminates when the park lamps are on.

Powertrain malfunction/reduced power (RTT)

Illuminates when a powertrain or an AWD/4WD fault has been detected. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Safety belt

Reminds you to fasten your safety belt. A Belt-Minder® chime will also sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt.

Service engine soon

The *service engine soon* indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned to the on position to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing. Normally, the “service engine soon” light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the “service engine soon” light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See the *Readiness for inspection/maintenance (I/M) testing* in the *Fuel and Refueling* chapter.

Solid illumination after the engine is started indicates the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) has detected a malfunction. Refer to *On-board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in the *Fuel and Refueling* chapter. If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.



WARNING: Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire.

Speed control (if equipped) (RTT)

The speed control system indicator light changes color to indicate what mode the system is in:

- On (gray light): Illuminates when the speed control system is turned on. Turns off when the speed control system is turned off.
- Engaged (white light): Illuminates when the speed control system is engaged. Turns off when the speed control system is disengaged.

Turn signal

Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS**Key In Ignition Warning Chime**

Sounds when the key is left in the ignition in the off or accessory position and the driver's door is opened.

Keyless Warning Alert (If Equipped)

Sounds when the keyless vehicle is in RUN and the driver's door is opened.

Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are on, the ignition is off (the key is not in the ignition) and the driver's door is opened.

Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

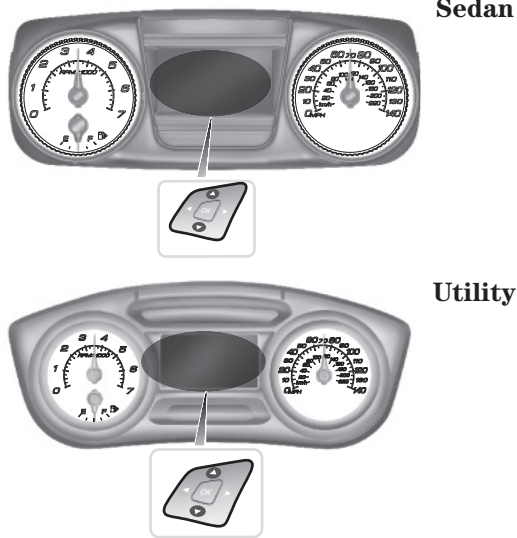
GENERAL INFORMATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and that you comply with all applicable laws.

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on the steering wheel. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

Information Display Controls



- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.
- Press the OK button to choose and confirm a setting/messages.

Menu

You can access the menus using the information display control.

Note: Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional for sedan and utility.

†Trip 1 / 2			
Trip Odometer			
Trip Timer			
Fuel Used			
Total Odometer (located in lower right of display). Note: this will also display in other menus.			
†See <i>Trip computer</i> later in this section for more information.			
†Fuel Economy			
Distance to E			
Inst Fuel Econ			
Average Fuel			
†See <i>Trip computer</i> later in this section for more information.			
Information			
Coolant Temp. — The engine coolant indicator will change colors indicating: blue for cool, gray for normal and red for hot. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.			
Settings			
Driver Assist	Traction Ctrl		
	Blind Spot		
	Cross Traffic		
	Rear Park Aid		
Display	Language	English, Español or Français	
	Units	Distance	Miles and Gal. or Km and Liters
Temperature		Fahrenheit (°F) or Celsius (°C)	

Settings			
Convenience	DTE Calculation	Normal or Towing	
	Locks	Remote Unlock	All Doors or Driver First
	Oil life Reset	Set XXX%	
	Wipers	Courtesy Wipe	
Reverse Wiper			
System Reset	Hold OK to Reset to Factory Default		
System Check			
<p>All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Use the up/down arrow buttons to scroll through the list. Engine hour meter and idle hours are also displayed in the system check.</p>			

Trip Computer

Resetting the Trip Computer

Press and hold OK on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and fuel information.

Trip Odometer

Registers the mileage of individual journeys.

Distance to E

Indicates the approximate distance the vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

Inst Fuel Econ

Shows instantaneous fuel usage.

Average fuel

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Fuel Used

Shows the amount of fuel used for a given trip.

Total Odometer

Registers the total mileage of the vehicle.

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on the vehicle options equipped with your vehicle, not all of the messages will display or be available. Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.



Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time. When a warning message appears, you must wait two seconds before being able to clear it. Certain

messages need to be confirmed before you can access the menus.

Message indicators: Some messages will be supplemented by a system specific symbol.

AdvanceTrac® / Traction Control Messages	Action / Description
Service AdvanceTrac	Displayed when the AdvanceTrac® system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Trailer Sway Reduce Speed	Displayed when the trailer sway control has detected trailer sway.
Alarm/Security Messages	Action / Description
To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle	Displayed when the perimeter alarm system is armed and the vehicle is entered using the key on the driver's side door. In order to prevent the perimeter alarm system from triggering, the ignition must be turned to start or on before the 12 second chime expires.

AWD Messages	Action / Description
AWD Off	Displayed when the system has been automatically disabled to protect itself. This is caused by operating the vehicle with the compact spare tire installed or if the system is overheating. The system will resume normal function and clear this message after cycling the ignition on and off and driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system is allowed to cool.
Check AWD	Displayed in conjunction with the powertrain malfunction/reduced power light when the system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Change AWD Power Transfer Unit Lube	Displayed when the system needs its power transfer unit lubrication changed. This message may be set if the vehicle has experienced extended periods of extreme/severe duty cycle driving.
Battery and Charging System Messages	Action / Description
Check Charging System	Displayed when the charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Turn Power Off to Save Battery	<p>Displayed when the battery management system determines that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the battery is at a low state of charge or, • the ignition has been in accessory position or on position with the engine off for approximately 45 minutes. <p>Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.</p>

Battery and Charging System Messages	Action / Description
Transport Mode Contact Dealer	Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Factory Mode Contact Dealer	Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Low Battery Features Tempor. Turned Off	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.
BLIS® Messages	Action / Description
Blind Spot Not Available Sensor Blocked	Displayed when the blind spot information system/cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Driver can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Blind Spot System Fault	Displayed when a fault with the blind spot information system has occurred. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked	Displayed when the blind spot information system/cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Driver can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Cross Traffic System Fault	Displayed when a fault with the cross traffic alert system has occurred. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Vehicle Coming From X	Displayed when the blind spot information system with cross traffic alert (CTA) system is operating and senses a vehicle.

Brake System Messages	Action / Description
Brake Fluid Level Low	Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately.
Check Brake System	Displayed when the brake system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Park Brake Engaged	Displayed when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Door Messages	Action / Description
X Door Ajar	Displayed when a door is not completely closed.
Liftgate Ajar	Displayed when the liftgate is not completely closed.
Trunk Ajar	Displayed when the trunk is not completely closed.
Fuel Messages	Action / Description
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	Displayed when the fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Fuel Level Low	Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition.

Information Displays

Maintenance Messages	Action / Description
LOW Engine Oil Pressure	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Change Engine Oil Soon	Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 10% or less.
Oil Change Required	Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%.
Engine Coolant Over Temp	Displayed when the engine coolant temperature is excessively high.
Washer Fluid Level Low	Indicates the washer fluid reservoir is less than one quarter full. Check the washer fluid level.
Steering Malfunction Service Now	Displays when the steering system needs service. See your authorized dealer.
Service Power Steering	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See your authorized dealer.
Service Power Steering Now	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system that requires service immediately. See your authorized dealer.
Power Steering Assist Fault	The power steering system has disabled power steering assist due to a system error. See your authorized dealer.
Park Aid Messages	Action / Description
Check Park Aid	Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the park aid is disabled.
Check Rear Park Aid	Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the park aid is disabled.
Rear Park Aid On Off	Displays the rear park aid status.

Passenger Sensing System Messages	Action / Description
Remove Objects Near Passenger Seat	Displayed when objects are by the passenger seat. After the objects are moved away from the seat, if the warning stays on or continues to come on contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Reminder Messages	Action / Description
Steering Lock Turn Wheel to Unlock	Displays when you need to turn the steering wheel in order to disengage the steering lock.
Shift to Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park.
Tire Messages	Action / Description
Low Tire Pressure	Displays when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure.
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	Displays when the tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer.
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to <i>Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)</i> in the <i>Wheels and tires</i> chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

GENERAL AUDIO INFORMATION**Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors**

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

AM: 530, 540–1700, 1710 kHz

FM: 87.9–107.7, 107.9 MHz

Radio reception factors	
Distance/Strength	The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station Overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

CD/CD Player Information

Note: CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.

Note: CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.

Note: Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only, wiping from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.

MP3 Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

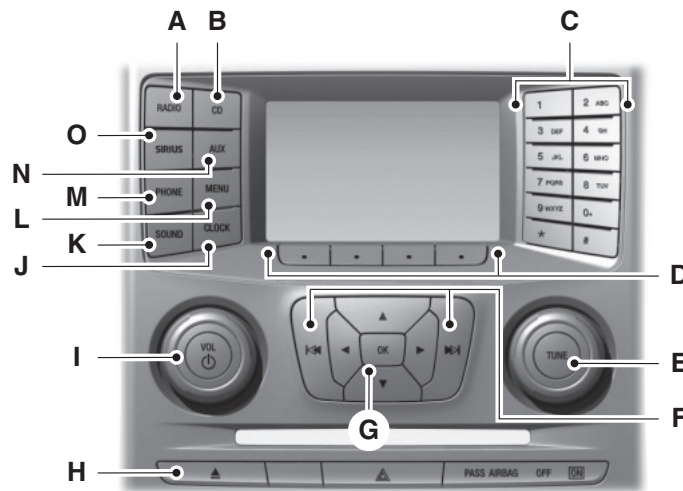
- There are two different modes for MP3 disc playback: MP3 track mode (system default) and MP3 folder mode.
- MP3 track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 disc. The player numbers each MP3 track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. **Note:** The maximum number of playable MP3 files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.
- MP3 folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) and all folders containing MP3 files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3), only files with the .mp3 extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 files are played, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the .mp3 files in the current folder.

MyFord® SYSTEM

Sedan Shown; Utility Similar



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: Some features, such as SIRIUS satellite radio, may not be available in your location. Check with your authorized dealer.

Note: Utility Police Interceptors: To improve the rear speaker performance in units equipped with rear speaker covers, please follow instructions shown in the Modifiers Guide.

- A. **RADIO:** Access the radio screen. Press the buttons below the radio screen to select different audio system functions.
- B. **CD:** Access CD mode. Press the function buttons to select on-screen options of Repeat or Shuffle.
- C. **Memory presets:** Store your favorite stations for later access. Use the following procedure for each frequency band and each preset button:
1. Press RADIO and select a frequency.
 2. Tune to the desired station.
 3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. The system momentarily mutes as confirmation the station is stored.
- D. **Function buttons:** Access the functions shown on-screen by pressing the corresponding audio buttons directly beneath them. The function buttons are context-dependent and change according to the current mode.
- E. **TUNE:**
- In radio mode, you can search the frequency band in individual increments.
 - In SIRIUS mode, you can find the next or previous available SIRIUS satellite station.
- F. **Reverse/Fast Forward; AM/FM/CD Seek:**
- In radio mode, select a frequency band and press one of the seek buttons. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction.
 - In SIRIUS mode, select the previous or next channel. If a specific category is selected, (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), use the SEEK buttons to find the previous or next channel in the selected category.
 - In CD mode, select the previous or next track.
- G. **OK:** Allows you to confirm commands with special phone and media features. If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC[®], see the SYNC[®] chapter for more information.
- H. **Eject:** Eject the CD.
- I. **Power and Volume:** Press the power control to turn the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.
- J. **CLOCK:** Set the time. Use the center arrow controls to move between options and set time.

K. **SOUND:** Allows you to adjust the sound settings (Treble, Bass, Middle, Fade and Balance).

1. Press Menu.
2. Scroll until Audio is selected and press OK.
3. Scroll to select Sound and press OK.

L. **MENU:** Allows you to access many functions of the audio system. See *Menu structure* following this table.

M. **PHONE:** Access SYNC® phone features.

N. **AUX:** Access your auxiliary input jack. See *Auxiliary input jack* later in this chapter.

O. **SIRIUS:** Access SIRIUS satellite radio features.

Menu Structure

Note: Depending on your system, some options may appear slightly different, not at all or on-screen and able to be selected using the function buttons.

Press MENU.

Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the options (if active).

Press the right arrow to enter a menu. Press the left arrow to exit a menu.

Radio Settings	
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
Set Category	Select to have the system search by certain music categories (rock, pop, country, etc.).
RBDS/RDS Text	Select to view additional broadcast data, if available. This feature defaults to off. RBDS must be on for you to set a category.

SIRIUS	
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
Show ESN	Select to view your satellite radio electronic serial number (ESN). You will need this number when communicating with SIRIUS® to activate, modify or track your account.
Channel Guide	Select to view available satellite radio channels. Press OK to select Tune Channel, Skip Channel or Lock Channel. Once a channel is skipped or locked, you can only access it by pressing Direct and entering the channel number. Locking or unlocking a channel requires your PIN.
Set Category	Select to view channel categories (pop, rock, news, etc.). If you select a category, seek and scan functions will only stop on channels in that category.
Alerts	Select to enable/disable an alert for a song, artist or team. The system alerts you when the selection is playing on another channel. Save up to 20 alerts.
Unlock All Stations	Use your PIN to unlock previously locked stations.
Skip No Stations	Use to unskip any channels you previously skipped.
Parental Lock (PIN)	Select to create a PIN which allows you to lock or unlock channels. Your initial PIN is 1234.

Audio Settings	
Spd. Comp. Vol.	Automatically adjusts the volume to compensate for speed and wind noise. You can set the system between 0 and +7.
Sound	Allows you to adjust sound settings such as treble, middle, bass, fade and balance.
Occupancy Mode	Optimizes sound quality for the chosen seating position.
CD Settings	
Scan All	Select to scan all disc selections.
Scan Folder	Select to scan all music in the current MP3 folder.
CD Compression	Select to bring soft and loud passages together for a more consistent listening level.
Clock Settings	
Set Time	Select to set the time.
Set Date	Select to set the calendar date.
24h Mode	Select to view clock time in a 12-hour mode or 24-hour mode.
Display Settings	
Dimming	Select to change display brightness.
Language	Select to display the language in English, French or Spanish.
Temp. Setting	Select to display the outside temperature in Fahrenheit or Celsius

AUXILIARY INPUT JACK

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.



WARNING: For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while the vehicle is moving.



WARNING: Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when the vehicle is in motion. Hard objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while the vehicle is in motion.

The auxiliary input jack (AIJ) allows you to connect and play music from your portable music player through the vehicle speakers. You can use any portable music player designed for use with headphones. Your audio extension cable must have male 1/8-inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at each end.

1. Make sure the vehicle, radio and portable music player are turned off and the transmission is in position **P**.
2. Plug the extension cable from the portable music player into the AIJ.
3. Turn on the radio. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD.
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Turn on your portable music player and adjust its volume to 1/2 the maximum.
6. Press AUX until LINE or LINE IN appears in the display. You should hear music from your device even if it is low.
7. Adjust the volume on your portable music player until it reaches the volume level of the FM station or CD. Do this by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

USB PORT (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See the *SYNC* chapter for more information.



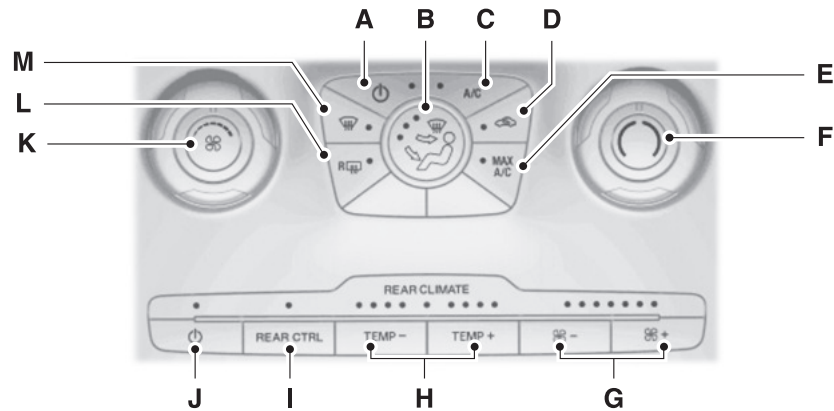
On sedan models, it is located on the instrument panel.



WARNING: Do not use a memory stick that would present a sharp edge rearward in the vehicle where it may have potential to damage a deploying passenger airbag.

On utility models, it is located in the center console or lower center of the instrument panel.

MANUAL HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM



A. **Power:** Press to turn the system on and off. When the system is off, outside air is prevented from entering the vehicle.

B. **Air distribution control:** Press to set the air distribution to a position listed below:



Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, demister vents and floor vents.



Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.



Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, floor vents, and demister vents.



Distributes air through the floor vents.

C. **A/C:** Press to turn air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools the vehicle using outside air. To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows slightly open for two to three minutes.

D. **Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When the LED on the button is lit, the air currently in the passenger compartment is being recirculated. Using recirculated air can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

E. **MAX A/C:** Distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel vents to cool the vehicle. This position is more economical and efficient than normal A/C.

F. **Front temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in the front of your vehicle. Turn to select the desired temperature.

G. **Rear fan speed control:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the rear your vehicle. Press + or - to select the desired fan speed.

H. **Rear temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in the rear of your vehicle. Press TEMP + and TEMP - to select the desired temperature.

I. **REAR CTRL:** This is a non-functional control. The rear climate controls system can only be controlled from the front.

J. **Rear climate control system power:** Press to turn the turn the rear climate control system on and off.

K. **Front fan speed control:** Controls the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. Turn to select the desired fan speed or switch off. If you switch the fan off, the windshield may fog up.

L. **Rear defrost:** Turns the heated windows and mirrors on and off. See *Heated windows and mirrors* later in this chapter for more information.

M. **Defrost:** Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents. This setting can also be used to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS (IF EQUIPPED)

Heated Rear Window

Note: The ignition must be switched on to use this feature.

Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. Press the button again within 10 minutes to switch it off. It switches off automatically after 10 minutes, or when you switch the ignition off.

Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines and will not be covered by your warranty.

CABIN AIR FILTER

Note: A cabin air filter must be installed at all times to prevent foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter, which is located just in front of the windshield under the cowl grille on the passenger side of the vehicle.

The particulate air filtration system is designed to reduce the concentration of airborne particles, such as dust, spores and pollen, in the air being supplied to the interior of the vehicle. The particulate filtration system gives the following benefits to customers:

- Improves the customer's driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- Improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- Protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

For more information regarding the interval at which you should replace the cabin air filter, see the *Scheduled Maintenance* chapter.

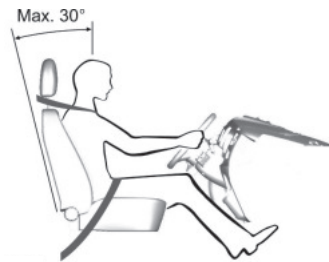
For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

! **WARNING:** Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

! **WARNING:** Do not recline the seat back as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injury in the event of a collision.

! **WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the seat backs to reduce the risk of injury in a collision or during heavy braking or when stopping suddenly.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a collision. We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Do not recline the seat back more than 30 degrees from vertical.

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible, remaining comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 inches (250 millimeters) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

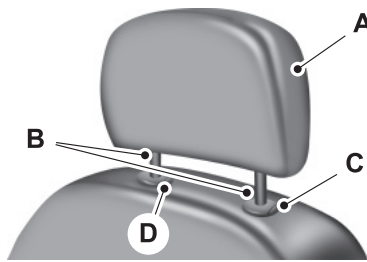
HEAD RESTRAINTS

! **WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

! **WARNING:** The adjustable head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied.

! **WARNING:** Install the head restraint properly to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

Note: Before adjusting any head restraint, adjust the seatback to an upright driving/riding position. Properly adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is even with the top of your head and positioned as close as possible to the back of your head. For occupants of extremely tall stature, adjust the head restraint to its full up position. To adjust the head restraint, do the following:

**Front seat head restraints**

The head restraints consist of:

- A. Energy absorbing head restraint
- B. Steel stems
- C. Guide sleeve adjust/release button
- D. Guide sleeve unlock/remove button

- **Raise:** Pull up on the head restraint (A).
- **Lower:** Press and hold the guide sleeve adjust/release button (C) and push down on the head restraint (A).
- **Remove:** Pull up the head restraint until it reaches the highest adjustment position. Insert and push a tool, such as a large paper clip, into the pin hole located on the side of the guide sleeve adjust/release button (D) and press the guide sleeve adjust/release button (C), then pull the head restraint upward.
- **Reinstall:** Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Tilting Head Restraints (If Equipped)

The front head restraints may have a tilting feature for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:




1. Adjust the seat back to an upright driving/riding position.
2. Tilt the head restraint forward by gently pulling the top of the head restraint.

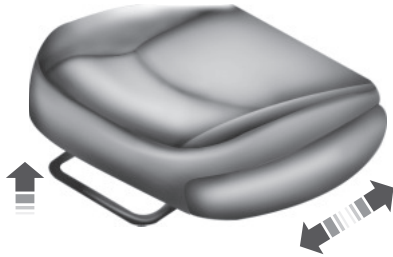
Once it is in its forward-most position, tilting it forward once more will release it to the upright position.

Note: Do not attempt to force the head restraint backward after it is tilted. Instead, continue tilting it forward until the head restraint releases to the upright position.

MANUAL SEATS**Recline adjustment**

 **WARNING:** Before returning the seat back to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seat back. After returning the seat back to its original position, pull on the seat back to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

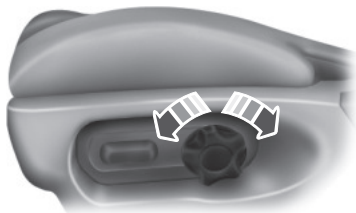
Moving the seats backwards and forwards



! **WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver's seat or seat back while the vehicle is moving.

! **WARNING:** Rock the seat backwards and forwards after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

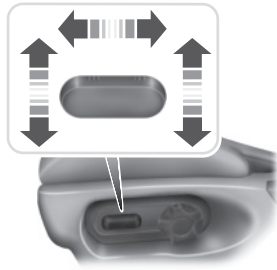
Lumbar adjustment (if equipped)



POWER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

! **WARNING:** Never adjust the driver's seat or seat back when the vehicle is moving.

! **WARNING:** Before returning the seat back to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seat back.



Use the side-mounted seat control to adjust the seat, up, down, forward and backward.

REAR SEATS (Utility only)

Recline adjustment (if equipped)



WARNING: Always drive and ride with your seat back upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



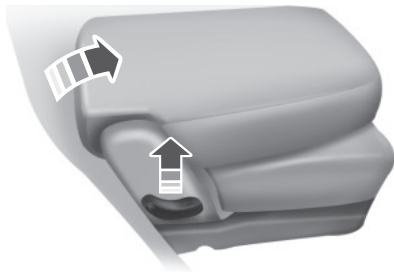
WARNING: Reclining the seat back can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.



Lift the handle to adjust seat back rearward or forward. The seat back can also fold forward until it is flat.

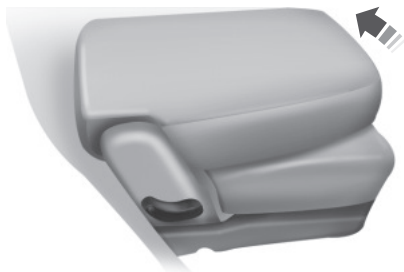
Fold-flat seatback (if equipped)

! **WARNING:** Before returning the seat back to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seat back. After returning the seat back to its original position, pull on the seat back to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.



Lift the handle and fold the seat back forward until it is flat.

Note: For the bench seats, make sure the center safety belt is unbuckled before folding the seat back.



Lift the seat back toward the rear of the vehicle until you hear a click.

AUXILIARY POWER POINTS

WARNING: Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigarette lighter socket (if equipped). Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: If used when the engine is not running, the battery will discharge. There may be insufficient power to restart your engine.

Note: Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the outlet and blow the fuse.

Note: Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.

Note: Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volts DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

Note: Do not use the power point for operating a cigarette lighter element.

Note: Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

Note: Always keep the power point caps closed when not being used.

Run the engine for full capacity use of the power point. To prevent the battery from being discharged:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when the vehicle is parked for extended periods.

Locations

Power points may be found:

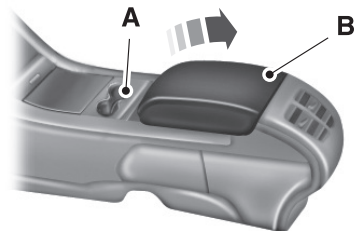
- on the instrument panel
- inside the center console storage compartment
- on the rear of the center console (utility only).

CENTER CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)



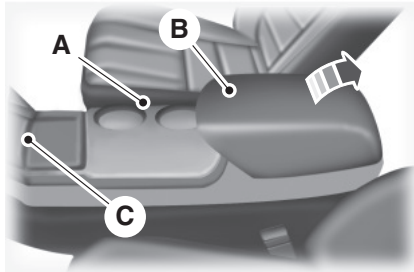
WARNING: Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

Sedan



- A. Cupholders
- B. Utility compartment

Utility



- A. Cupholders
- B. Utility storage compartment with powerpoint
- C. Auxiliary AV connections, USB ports and powerpoint (if equipped)

Console Mounting Plates

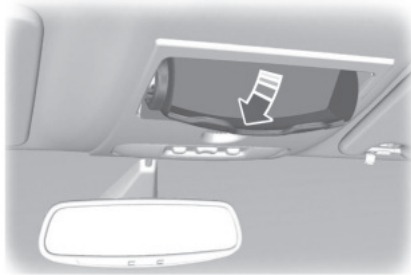
The mounting plates should only be removed and replaced during the upfitting process. They should not be removed permanently.

Universal Top Tray

The trim on the top of the instrument panel can be removed to aid in upfitting aftermarket accessories or mounting equipment.


OVERHEAD CONSOLE


The appearance of the overhead console will vary according to your option package.





Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

GENERAL INFORMATION

 **WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

 **WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

 **WARNING:** Do not start your vehicle in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

 **WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you connect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You may disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field strength of radio noise.

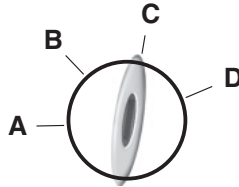
When starting your vehicle, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

128 Starting and Stopping the Engine

IGNITION SWITCH

Note: To switch the engine off when your vehicle is moving, move the transmission selector lever to position **N**. Use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop. After your vehicle has stopped, switch the engine off and move the transmission selector lever to position **P**. Turn the key to the accessory or off position.

Note: Do not store the key in the ignition after the vehicle is turned off and you have left the vehicle. This could cause a drain on the battery.



A. **Off:** The ignition is off.

B. **Accessory:** Allows the electrical accessories, such as the radio, to operate while the engine is not running.

C. **On:** All the electrical circuits are operational. Warning lights are illuminated. This is the key position when driving.

D. **Start:** Cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When the engine starts, the idle RPM runs faster to warm the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have the vehicle checked.

Before starting the vehicle:

- Make sure all occupants buckle their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is set.
- Make sure the gearshift is in position **P**.
- Turn the key to on without turning the key to start.

Some warning lights will briefly illuminate.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

2. Select position **P** or **N**.
3. Turn the key to start the engine. The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until the vehicle starts.

Note: If the engine does not start on the first try, wait for a short period of time and try again.

If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below -13°F (-25°C), press the accelerator pedal slightly and try again.

If the engine does not start after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this flooded engine procedure.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Select position **P** or **N**.
4. Start the engine.

Cold Weather Starting (Flexible Fuel Vehicles Only)

The starting characteristics of all grades of E-85 ethanol make it unsuitable for use when ambient temperatures fall below 0°F (-18°C). Consult your fuel distributor for the availability of winter grade ethanol. As the outside temperature approaches freezing, ethanol fuel distributors should supply winter grade ethanol (same as with unleaded gasoline). If summer grade ethanol is used in cold weather conditions, 0°F to 32°F (-18°C to 0°C), you may experience increased cranking times, rough idle or hesitation until the engine has warmed up.

You may experience a decrease in peak performance when the engine is cold when operating on E-85 ethanol.

Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time as starter damage may occur. If the engine fails to start, turn the key to off and wait 30 seconds before trying again.

Do not use starting fluid such as ether in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

If you should experience cold weather starting problems on E-85 ethanol, and neither an alternative brand of E-85 ethanol nor an engine block heater is available, the addition of unleaded gasoline to your tank improves cold starting performance. Your vehicle is designed to operate on E-85 ethanol alone, unleaded gasoline alone, or any mixture of the two.

130 Starting and Stopping the Engine

If the Engine Fails to Start Using the Preceding Instructions (Flexible Fuel Vehicles Only)

1. Press and hold down the accelerator 1/3 to 1/2 way to floor, then crank the engine.
2. When the engine starts, release the key, then gradually release the accelerator pedal as the engine speeds up. If the engine still fails to start, repeat Step 1.

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



WARNING: If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have this checked immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods of time, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 inch (2.5 centimeters).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)



WARNING: Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or physical injury.



WARNING: Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged (cheater) adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

Note: The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120 volt A/C electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory or Canadian Standards Association. This extension cord must be able to be used outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked *Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances*. Never use an indoor extension cord outdoors; it could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and the heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth, if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel® “no cap” fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



WARNING: The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.



WARNING: Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.

- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin and/or clothing, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

FUEL QUALITY

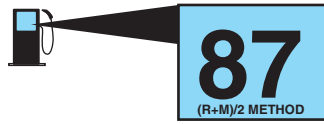
Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

Note: We recommend that you use only high quality fuel without additives or other engine treatments.

For FFV engines; if you experience starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems during a cold start, try a different brand of E85 fuel. If the driveability problems continue, fill the vehicle with regular unleaded gasoline and drive vehicle normally until gasoline is used. See your authorized dealer if the problem persists.

Choosing the Right Fuel

Use only UNLEADED fuel or UNLEADED fuel blended with a maximum of 15% ethanol. Do not use fuel ethanol (E85), diesel fuel, fuel-methanol, leaded fuel or any other fuel because it could damage or impair the emission control system. The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law.

Octane Recommendations

“Regular” unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87 is recommended. Some stations offer fuels posted as “Regular” with an octane rating below 87,

particularly in high altitude areas. Fuels with octane levels below 87 are not recommended.

Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal. With keyless ignition, just start the engine. Crank time will be longer than usual.
- Normally, adding 1 gallon (3.8L) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gallon (3.8L) may be required.
- The service engine soon indicator may come on. For more information on the service engine soon indicator, refer to *Warning lamps and indicators* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

Refilling with a Portable Fuel Container

WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of portable fuel containers or aftermarket funnels into the capless fuel system. This could damage the fuel system and its seal, and may cause fuel to run onto the ground instead of filling the tank, which could result in serious personal injury.



WARNING: Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels; they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it. The included funnel has been specially designed to work safely with your vehicle.

When filling the vehicle's fuel tank from a portable fuel container, use the funnel included with the vehicle.



1. Locate the white plastic funnel in the spare tire compartment.
2. Slowly insert the funnel into the capless fuel system.
3. Fill the vehicle with fuel from the portable fuel container.

4. When done, clean the funnel or properly dispose of it. Extra funnels can be purchased from your authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

REFUELING



WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others:

- Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island;
- Turn off your engine when you are refueling;
- Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle;
- Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel;
- Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle — this is against the law in some places;
- Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.
- Do not use personal electronic devices while refueling.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- DO NOT fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- DO NOT use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

Easy Fuel® “No Cap” Fuel System

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Open the fuel door by pulling the indent on the door.
3. Insert the fuel plug key (if equipped) into the locking plug and turn it counterclockwise to unlock it.
4. Slowly insert the fuel filler nozzle fully into the fuel system, and leave the nozzle fully inserted until you are done pumping.
5. After you are done pumping fuel, slowly remove the fuel filler nozzle—allow about ten seconds after pumping fuel before removing the fuel filler nozzle. This allows residual fuel to drain back into the fuel tank and not spill onto the vehicle.
6. Reinstall the plug (if equipped) into the fuel fill inlet and turn the key clockwise to lock.

Note: Do not overfill the tank or fuel spillage will occur.

If the fuel fill inlet was not properly closed, a Check Fuel Fill Inlet message may appear on the information display. See the *Information Displays* chapter for more information.

At the next opportunity, do the following:

1. Safely pull off the road.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Open the fuel filler door and remove any visible debris from the fuel fill opening.
4. Insert either the fuel fill nozzle or the fuel fill funnel provided with the vehicle several times to dislodge any debris and/or allow the inlet to close properly.

If this action corrects the problem, the message may not reset immediately. It may take several driving cycles for the message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after four or more hours with the engine off) followed by city/highway driving. Continuing to drive with the message on may cause the service engine soon lamp to turn on as well.

FUEL CONSUMPTION**Filling the tank**

The advertised capacity is the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the amount of fuel in the tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the ignition off before fueling; an inaccurate reading results if the engine is left running.
- Use the same fill rate (low–medium–high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click–offs when filling.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

Calculating fuel economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of driving (this is your engine's break-in period); a more accurate measurement is obtained after 2,000 miles–3,000 miles (3,200 km–4,800 km). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill-ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three to five tank fill-ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Calculate fuel economy as follows:

Standard: Divide miles traveled by gallons used.

Metric: Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled.

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This provides an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures mean lower fuel economy.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

WARNING: Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter which will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If other than Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not

permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your warranty information for complete emission warranty information.

On-board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II). The OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate.

Examples are:

1. The vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel fill inlet may not have been properly closed. See *Easy Fuel*® “no cap” fuel system in this chapter.
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time the engine is started. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, the vehicle may need to be serviced. Refer to *On-board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in this chapter.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is considered not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system is designed to check the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving may be performed:

15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway/highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, the above driving cycle will have to be repeated.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNING: Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Your vehicle has been designed to improve fuel economy by reducing fuel usage while coasting or decelerating. When you take your foot off the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to slow down, the torque converter clutch locks up and aggressively shuts off fuel flow to the engine while decelerating. This fuel economy benefit may be perceived as a light to medium braking sensation when removing your foot from the accelerator pedal.

P (Park)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the front wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

- Press the brake pedal
- Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)

R (Reverse)

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

N (Neutral)

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

D (Drive)

The normal driving position for the best fuel economy. Transmission operates in gears one through six.

**L (Low Gear)**

The low button is located at the end of the column shifter. Activating (L) Low Gear automatically:

- Provides maximum engine braking.
 - Will downshift to the lowest available gear for the current vehicle speed; allows for first gear when vehicle reaches lower speeds.
- Is not intended for use under extended or normal driving conditions and results in lower fuel economy.

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature is designed to increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of the vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm shifts, soft shifts or both. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, the strategy must be relearned.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck in Mud or Snow

Note: Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

Note: Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

USING YOUR ALL-WHEEL-DRIVE (AWD) SYSTEM

AWD uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicles cannot. The AWD system is active all the time and requires no input from the operator.

Note: Your AWD vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle under other than those conditions could subject the vehicle to excessive stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.

Note: When an AWD system fault is present, the warning Check AWD will display in the message center. The AWD system is not functioning correctly and defaulted to front-wheel drive. When this warning is displayed, have your vehicle serviced at an authorized dealer.

Note: The AWD Off message may also be displayed in the message center if the AWD system has overheated and defaulted to front-wheel drive. This condition may occur if the vehicle was operated in extreme conditions with excessive wheel slip, such as deep sand. To resume normal AWD function as soon as possible, stop the vehicle in a safe location and stop the engine for at least 10 minutes. After the engine has been restarted and the AWD system has adequately cooled, the AWD Off message will turn off and normal AWD function will return. The AWD Off message will turn off when the system cools and normal AWD function returns.

The Power Transfer Unit (PTU) in police vehicles do not require any normal scheduled maintenance. The system is electronically monitored and notifies the driver of required service by displaying the message Change AWD Power Transfer Unit Lube in the information display. The PTU lube will be more likely to require a fluid change if the vehicle has experienced extended periods of extreme/severe duty cycle driving. Do not check or change the PTU lubricant unless the unit has been submerged in water, shows signs of leakage or a message indicating required service is displayed. Contact your authorized dealer for service and to reset the PTU lube life monitor.

If your vehicle is equipped with AWD, a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided should never be used. The AWD system may disable automatically and enter front-wheel drive only mode to protect driveline components if a non-full sized tire is installed. This condition may be indicated by an AWD Off message in the information display. If there is an AWD Off message in the message center from using the spare

tire, this indicator should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced normal road tire and cycling the ignition off and on. It is recommended to reinstall the repaired or replaced road tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause the AWD system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive or damage the AWD system.

How Utility Vehicles Differ from Other Vehicles (if equipped)

Truck and utility vehicles can differ from some other vehicles. Your vehicle may be higher to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.

The differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

Maintain steering wheel control at all times, especially in rough terrain. Since sudden changes in terrain can result in abrupt steering wheel motion, make sure you grip the steering wheel from the outside. Do not grip the spokes.

Drive cautiously to avoid vehicle damage from concealed objects such as rocks and stumps.

You should either know the terrain or examine maps of the area before driving. Map out your route before driving in the area. To maintain steering and braking control of your vehicle, you must have all four wheels on the ground and they must be rolling, not sliding or spinning.

Driving In Special Conditions With All-Wheel Drive

All-Wheel Drive (AWD) vehicles are equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough roads and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the highway.

When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use a low gear when possible. Lower gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

Basic operating principles in special conditions

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or rollover. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

If your vehicle gets stuck

WARNING: Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the lock position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.



WARNING: Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Note: Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

Note: Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

If your vehicle is equipped with AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™, it may be beneficial to disengage the AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™ system while attempting to rock the vehicle.

Emergency maneuvers

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid “over-driving” your vehicle (i.e., turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency). Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.
- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.
- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

Do not drive your AWD vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This will cause the AWD system to overheat. After the system has cooled down, normal AWD function will return. When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use L (Low) gear when possible. L (Low) gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

Mud and water

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks) (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even AWD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating drive shafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating drive shafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Note: Driving through deep water may damage the transmission.

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant and PTU (power transfer unit) lubricant should be checked and changed if necessary.



“Tread Lightly” is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nation's wilderness areas. Ford Motor Company joins the U.S. Forest

Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by “treading lightly.”

Driving on hilly or sloping terrain

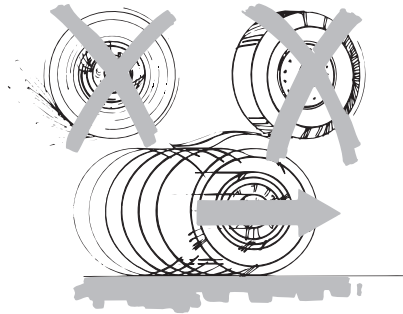
Note: Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down.

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If you do stall out, do not try to turnaround because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.



Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral; instead, disengage overdrive or manually shift to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer the vehicle.

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, therefore apply the brakes steadily. Do not “pump” the brakes.

Driving on snow and ice



WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously.

Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of the vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

Note: Excessive tire slippage can cause transmission damage.

AWD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although an AWD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won't stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. Since your vehicle is equipped with a four wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS), do not "pump" the brakes. Refer to the *Brakes* section of this chapter for additional information on the operation of the anti-lock brake system.

Maintenance and modifications

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will rollover as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends that caution be used with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder or luggage racks).

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to off-highway usage.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.

Note: Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. Refer to the *Vehicle Care* chapter for wheel cleaning instructions.

This vehicle is equipped with heavy-duty front disc brake pads to meet the varying demands of different police service for fade resistance and other performance requirements.

Police pursuits involving hard braking in high temperatures in the brake system and potential accelerated component wear. Ford recommends brake system inspection and maintenance according to service manual procedures following high speed pursuits with heavy brake usage.



See the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for information on the brake system warning light.

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Turn the engine off, shift to position **P** and apply the parking brake, then inspect the accelerator pedal for any interferences. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



The ABS lamp momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start-up, remains on or flashes, the ABS may be disabled and may need to be serviced.



If the ABS is disabled, normal braking is still effective. If the brake warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

When the system is operating, the brake pedal will pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

The ABS will not eliminate the dangers inherent when:

- you drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- you take corners too fast.
- the road surface is poor.

PARKING BRAKE

WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



WARNING: Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the transmission selector lever is securely latched in position **P**.

To set the parking brake, press the parking brake pedal down to its fullest extent.

To release the parking brake, press the parking brake pedal down again.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

In certain situations (e.g. stuck in snow or mud), turning the traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin with full engine power.

The traction control system can be turned off through the information display. See the *Information Displays* chapter.

System indicator lights and messages

WARNING: If a failure has been detected within the AdvanceTrac® system, the stability control light will illuminate steadily. Verify that the AdvanceTrac® system was not manually disabled using the information display control. If the stability control light still illuminates steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with AdvanceTrac® disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.




The stability control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes when a driving condition activates the stability system.




The stability control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when the traction control system is turned off.

When the traction control system is turned off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

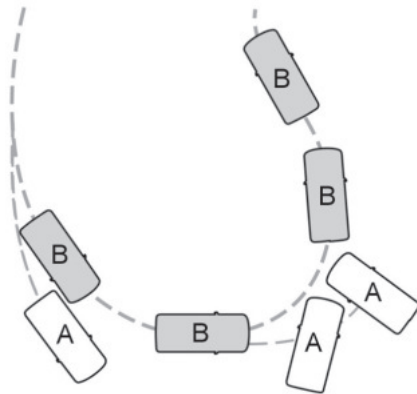
 **WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and/or wheel/tire size may change the handling characteristics of the vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the AdvanceTrac® system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the AdvanceTrac® system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the AdvanceTrac® sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the AdvanceTrac® system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

 **WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the AdvanceTrac® system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your AdvanceTrac® system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The AdvanceTrac® system helps you keep control of your vehicle when on a slippery surface. The electronic stability control (ESC) portion of the system helps avoid skids and lateral slides. The traction control system (TCS) helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction. (For details on TCS operation, see the *Traction Control* chapter.) **On utility models**, the system also includes curve control which assists in vehicle handling in following the road during adverse maneuvering and roll stability control which helps avoid a vehicle rollover.

A Vehicle without AdvanceTrac® skidding off its intended route.


B Vehicle with AdvanceTrac® maintaining control on a slippery surface.





USING ADVANCETRAC® WITH RSC®


The system automatically activates when you start your engine. The AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system cannot be completely turned off, but the ESC and RSC® portions of the system are disabled when the transmission is in R (Reverse). The traction control portion of the system can be turned off independently. See the *Traction Control* chapter.

SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

 **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at parking speeds. Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

 **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in R (Reverse) and when using the sensing system.

 **WARNING:** This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

 **WARNING:** Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.

Note: Keep the sensors (located on the bumper/fascia) free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper/fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.

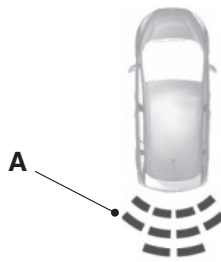
The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of the bumper area. The system turns on automatically whenever the ignition is switched on.

When receiving a detection warning, the radio volume is reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio volume returns to the previous level.

The system can be turned off using the information display control. Refer to the *Information Display* chapter. If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow the driver to switch the faulted system on.

Using the Rear Sensing System

The rear sensors are only active when the transmission is in R (Reverse). As the vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is fewer than 12 inches (30 centimeters) away, the warning sounds continuously. If a stationary or receding object is detected farther than 12 inches (30 centimeters) from the side of the vehicle, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.



A. Coverage area of up to 6 feet (2 meters) from the rear bumper (with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper).

The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in R (Reverse):

- and moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- but not moving, and a moving object is approaching the rear of the vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- and moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of the vehicle at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

REAR VIEW CAMERA SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



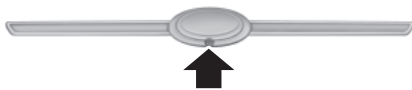
WARNING: Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop the vehicle.

! **WARNING:** Use caution when using the rear video camera and the trunk/liftgate is ajar. If the trunk/liftgate is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines (if enabled) have been removed when the trunk/liftgate is ajar.

! **WARNING:** Use caution when turning camera features on or off while in R (Reverse). Make sure the vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind the vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind the vehicle.



On sedan models, the camera is located on the trunk under the Ford badge.



On utility models, the camera is located on the liftgate.

Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in R (Reverse). The system uses fixed guidelines which show the actual path the vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning the vehicle with another object behind the vehicle.

Note: Do not use the camera system if either the trunk (sedan) or the liftgate (wagon) is ajar.

Note: If the image comes on while the transmission is not in R (Reverse), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

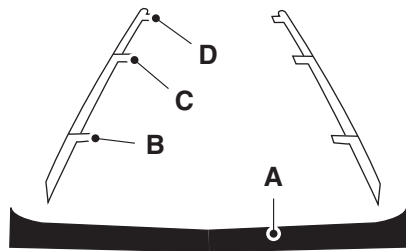
Note: When towing, the camera only sees what is being towed behind the vehicle. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles the guidelines (if equipped) may disappear once the trailer tow connector is engaged.

Note: The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- The camera's view is obstructed by mud, water or debris. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of the vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

Guidelines

Note: The guidelines are only available when the transmission is in R (Reverse).



- A. Rear bumper
- B. Fixed guideline: Red zone
- C. Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- D. Fixed guideline: Green zone

The fixed guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are further away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

Rear Camera Delay

The camera image in the rear view mirror remains on for a few seconds to assist in parking or attaching a trailer.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

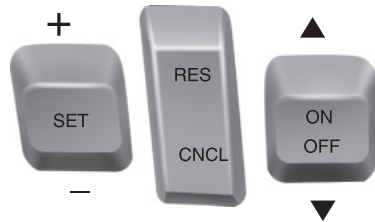
USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNING: Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

Note: Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up or down a steep hill. Apply the brakes if the vehicle speed increases above the set speed while driving downhill.

Note: Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed while driving uphill.

The cruise controls are located on the steering wheel.

**Switching Cruise Control On**

Press the **ON** control up and release.



The indicator will appear in the instrument cluster.

Setting a Speed

1. Accelerate to the desired speed.
2. Press the **SET** control upward and release.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator will change colors in the instrument cluster.

Changing the Set Speed

Note: If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, you will return to the speed that you previously set.

- Press **SET** up or down and hold to increase or decrease the set speed. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.
- Press **SET** up or down and release. The set speed will change in approximately 1 mph (2 km/h) increments.
- Press the accelerator pedal or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press **SET** up and release.

Canceling the Set Speed

Press **CNCL** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed will not be erased.

Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES**.

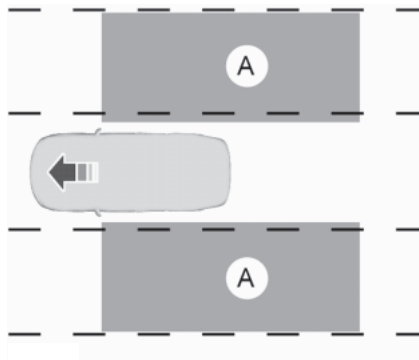
Switching Cruise Control Off

Note: The set speed is erased when you switch off cruise control.

Press the **OFF** control down and release or turn off the ignition.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM (BLIS®) WITH CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT (CTA) (IF EQUIPPED)

! **WARNING:** To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the BLIS® as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors and looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. BLIS® is not a replacement for careful driving and only an assist.



BLIS® aids the driver in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of the vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 10 feet (3 meters) beyond the bumper. The system alerts you if certain vehicles enter the blind spot zone while driving.

BLIS® aids the driver in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of the vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 10 feet (3 meters) beyond the bumper. The system alerts you if certain vehicles enter the blind spot zone while driving.

CTA warns the driver of vehicles approaching from the sides when the transmission is in R (Reverse).

Note: BLIS® is not designed to prevent contact with other vehicles or objects; or to detect parked vehicles, people, animals or infrastructure (fences, guardrails, trees, etc.). It is designed to alert the driver to vehicles in the blind zones.

Note: When a vehicle passes quickly through the blind zone (typically fewer than two seconds), the system does not trigger.

Using the Systems

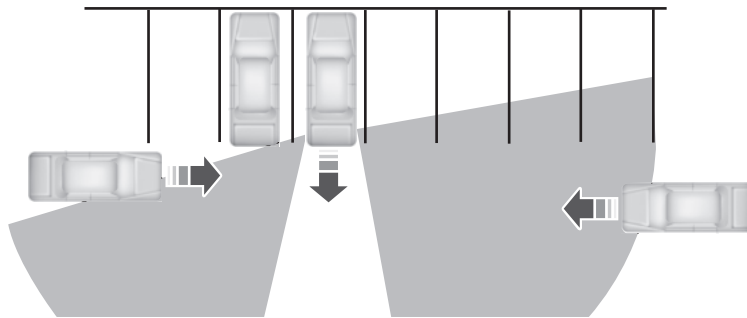
BLIS® turns on when the engine is started and the vehicle is driven forward above 3 mph (5 km/h); it remains on while the transmission is in D (Drive) and N (Neutral). If shifted out of D (Drive) or N (Neutral), the system enters CTA mode. Once shifted back into D (Drive), BLIS® turns back on when the vehicle is driven above 3 mph (5 km/h).

Note: BLIS® does not function in R (Reverse) or P (Park) or provide any additional warning when a turn signal is on.

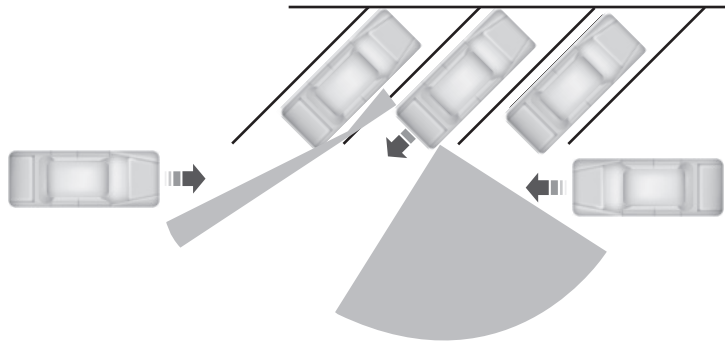
CTA detects approaching vehicles from up to 45 feet (14 meters) away though coverage decreases when the sensors are blocked. Reversing slowly helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

! **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, NEVER use the CTA system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors and looking over your shoulder before backing out of a parking space. CTA is not a replacement for careful driving and only an assist.

In this first example, the left sensor is only partially obstructed; zone coverage is nearly maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at shallow angles. Here, the left sensor is mostly obstructed; zone coverage on that side is severely limited.



System Lights and Messages



The BLIS® and CTA systems illuminate a yellow alert indicator in the outside mirror on the side of the vehicle the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Note: The alert indicator dims when the headlamp switch is not in the off position and nighttime darkness is detected.

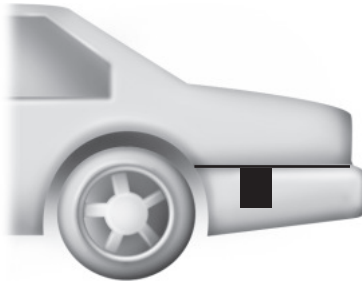
CTA also sounds a series of tones and a message appears in the information display indicating a vehicle is coming from the right or left. CTA works with the reverse sensing system which sounds its own series of tones; see the *Parking Aids* chapter.

System Sensors



WARNING: Just prior to the system recognizing a blocked condition and alerting the driver, the number of missed objects will increase. To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the BLIS® as a replacement for using the side and rear view mirrors and looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. BLIS® is not a replacement for careful driving and only an assist.

Note: It is possible to get a blockage warning with no blockage present; this is rare and known as a false blockage warning. A false blocked condition either self-corrects or clears after a key cycle.



The system uses radar sensors which are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of the vehicle. Do not allow these areas to become obstructed by mud, snow or bumper stickers, as this can cause degraded system performance.

If the system detects a degraded performance condition, **BLIND SPOT NOT AVAILABLE**, or **CROSS TRAFFIC NOT**

AVAILABLE appear in the information display and the alert indicator illuminates in the appropriate mirror(s). The information display warning can be cleared but the alert indicator remains illuminated.

When the blockage is removed, the system can be reset in two ways: 1) when at least two objects are detected while driving, or 2) turn the ignition key from on to off, then back on. If the blockage is still present after the key cycle, the system senses again that it is blocked after driving in traffic.

Reasons for messages being displayed	
The radar surface is dirty or obstructed	Clean the fascia area in front of the radar or remove the obstruction.
The radar surface is not dirty or obstructed	Drive normally in traffic for a few minutes to allow the radar to detect passing vehicles so it can clear the blocked state.
Heavy rainfall/snowfall interferes with the radar signals	No action required. The system automatically resets to an unblocked state once the rainfall/snowfall rate decreases or stops. Do not use BLIS® and/or CTA in these conditions.

System Limitations

The BLIS® and CTA systems do have their limitations; situations such as severe weather conditions or debris build-up on the sensor area may limit vehicle detection.

The following are other situations that may limit the BLIS®:

- Certain maneuvering of vehicles entering and exiting the blind zone.
- Vehicles passing through the blind zone at very fast rates.
- When several vehicles forming a convoy pass through the blind zone.

The following are other situations that may limit the CTA system:

- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects obstructing the sensors.
- Approaching vehicles passing at speeds greater than 15 mph (24 km/h).
- Driving in reverse faster than 3 mph (5 km/h).
- Backing out of an angled parking spot.

False Alerts

Note: If the vehicle has a factory equipped tow bar, and it is towing a trailer, the sensors will detect the trailer and turn the BLIS off to avoid false alerts. For non-factory equipped tow bars you may want to turn the BLIS off manually.

There may be certain instances when either the BLIS® or CTA systems illuminate the alert indicator with no vehicle in the coverage zone; this is known as a false alert. Some amount of false alerts are normal; they are temporary and self-correct.

System Errors

If either system senses a problem with the left or right sensor, the BLIS® indicator in the information display will illuminate and remain on. Also, **BLIND SPOT SYSTEM FAULT** or **CROSS TRAFFIC SYSTEM FAULT** message will appear. When problems that may cause the left or right indicator not to illuminate, only the information display message faults appear.

Switching the Systems Off and On

One or both systems can be switched off temporarily by using the information display control; refer to the *Information Display* chapter. When the BLIS® is switched off, the driver does not receive alerts and the information display shows BLIND SPOT SYS OFF and/or CTA SYSTEM OFF. The system switches back on whenever the ignition is switched on.

One or both systems can also be switched off permanently at your authorized dealer. Once switched off, switching it back on must also be done at the dealership.

STEERING**Electric Power Steering**

WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. When a system error is detected a steering message will appear in the information display.



WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation of the electronic system. When an electronic error is detected, a message will be displayed in the information display. If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place, and turn off the engine. After at least 10 seconds, reset the system by restarting the engine, and watch the information display for a steering message. If a steering message returns, or returns while driving, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked.



WARNING: Obtain immediate service if a system error is detected. You may not notice any difference in the feel of your steering, but a serious condition may exist. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power-assisted steering system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving (or if the ignition is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort. Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort it takes for you to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and permanent damage to your steering system. If this should occur, you will neither lose the ability to steer the vehicle manually nor will it cause permanent damage. Typical steering and driving maneuvers will allow the system to cool and steering assist will return to normal.

When a steering system error is detected, steering messages may appear in the information display.

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper vehicle alignment

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander/pull.

CARGO MANAGEMENT**Load Safe Label**

Refer to the label on the trunk lid or liftgate for additional information.

Load Floor

Do not permanently remove the foam structure under the load floor that surrounds the spare tire. The load floor will not be supported properly without it.

The maximum load floor cargo weight, evenly distributed and with a full size spare tire installed, is:

- Utility — 800 lb (362 kg)
- Sedan — 420 lb (190 kg)

Trunk Vault (If Equipped, Sedan Only)

Use the key to lock and unlock the door. Turn the handle to open.

Electronic Utility Tray (If Equipped, Sedan Only)

Note: Make sure the key is not in the trunk vault before moving the tray rearward.

Note: The tray must be latched in the forward position before operating the vehicle or damage may occur to the vehicle or equipment.



The tray can be used to mount electronic equipment. It will latch in either the full-forward or full-rearward position. Push down on the levers on both sides of the tray to release the latches and move the tray.

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS (IF EQUIPPED, UTILITY ONLY)

! **WARNING:** When loading the roof rail crossbars, it is recommended to evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Note: The maximum recommended load is 100 lb (45 kg), evenly distributed on the crossbars.

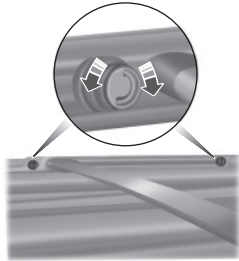
Note: Loads should never be placed directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.

For proper function of the roof rack system, loads must be placed directly on crossbars affixed to the roof rack side rails. Your vehicle may be equipped with factory-installed crossbars. Ford Genuine Accessory crossbars, designed specifically for your vehicle, are also recommended for use with your roof rack system.

Make sure that the load is securely fastened. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

Adjusting the Crossbars (If Equipped)

Note: Wind noise can be minimized by either removing or repositioning the crossbars when they are not in use. Position the rear crossbar fully rearward and the front crossbar 10 inches (25 centimeters) from the front end-cap.



1. Loosen the tie-down hooks at both sides of the crossbar by turning them counterclockwise. A small screwdriver or similar tool can be used to break the torque by inserting the shaft into the tie-down hook and twisting.
2. Slide the crossbar to the desired position. This may require someone on each side of the crossbar.
3. Tighten the tie-down hooks at both sides of the crossbar by turning them clockwise until tight. A small screwdriver or similar tool can be used to tighten the hook an additional half turn.

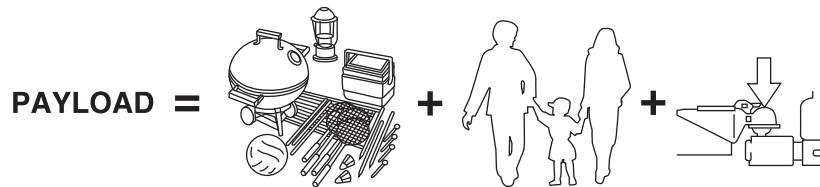
Make sure to check that the tie-down hooks are tight each time a load is added or removed from the roof rack, and periodically while traveling. Make sure that the load is secure before traveling.

LOAD LIMIT**Vehicle Loading – With and Without a Trailer**


This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

Base Curb Weight – is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Curb Weight – is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.



Payload – is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **“THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb.”** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

 **WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

Example only:

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY TOTAL 5 FRONT 2 REAR 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : **XXX kg or XXX lbs.**

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
REAR	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
SPARE	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI	

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY TOTAL 5 FRONT 2 REAR 3
NOMBRE DE PLACES TOTAL 5 AVANT 2 ARRIERE 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 492 kg or 1085 lbs.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 492 kg ou 1085 lb.

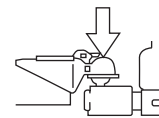
TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	
REAR ARRIERE	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T145/90R17	415 KPA, 60 PSI	

CARGO =

=



+

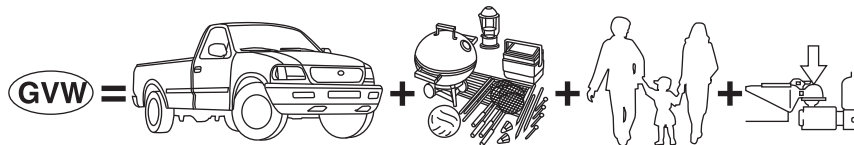


Cargo Weight – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load weight is also part of cargo weight.

GAW (Gross Axle Weight) – is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) – is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**

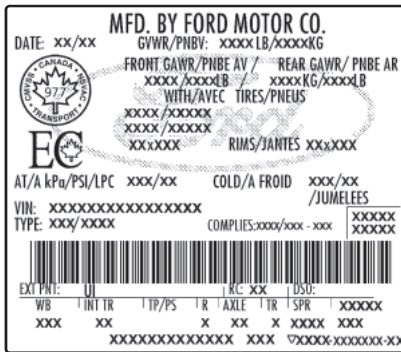
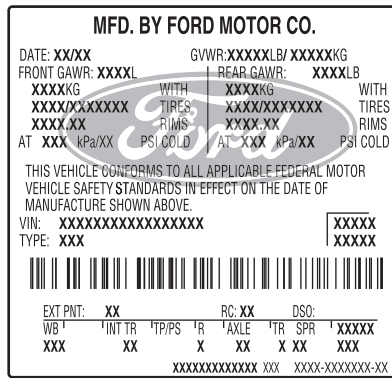
Note: For trailer towing information refer to *Trailer towing* found in this chapter or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer.



GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight) – is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) – is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**

- Example only:



⚠ WARNING: Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.



GCW (Gross Combined Weight) – is the weight of the loaded vehicle (GVW) plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating) – is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer – including all cargo and passengers – that the vehicle can handle without risking damage.

(Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at GVWR, not at GCWR. Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the GCW of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the GVWR of the towing vehicle. **The GCW must never exceed the GCWR.**

Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight – is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with only mandatory options, no cargo (internal or external), a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer), and driver only (150 lb. [68 kg]). **Consult your authorized dealer (or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer) for more detailed information.**



WARNING: Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.



WARNING: Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.



WARNING: Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. ($1400 - 750$ (5×150) = 650 lb.). In metric units ($635 - 340$ (5×68) = 295 kg.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

- Another example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, 4 of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be: $1,400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1,400 - 1,100 - 150 = 150$ lb. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: $635 \text{ kg} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$ kg.

- A final example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be: $1,400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1,400 - 440 - 1,200 = -240$ lb. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$ kg. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (104 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:

$1,400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1,400 - 440 - 900 = 60$ lb. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$ kg.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position.

Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles



WARNING: Loaded vehicles may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Your vehicle can haul more cargo and people than most passenger cars. Depending upon the type and placement of the load, hauling cargo and people may raise the center of gravity of the vehicle.

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNING: Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.



WARNING: Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of the vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Note: For information on electrical items such as fuses or relays, see the *Fuses* chapter.

Your vehicle's load capacity is designated by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle.

Towing a trailer places an additional load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components periodically during, and after, any towing operation.

Load Placement

To help minimize how trailer movement affects the vehicle when driving:

- Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor.
- Load the heaviest items so they are centered between the left and right side trailer tires.
- Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10–15% of the loaded trailer weight.
- Select a tow bar with the correct rise or drop. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected, the trailer frame should be level, or slightly angled down toward the vehicle, when viewed from the side.

When driving with a trailer or payload, a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight. Additional information regarding proper trailer loading and setting your vehicle up for towing is noted under *Load limit* in the *Load Carrying* chapter and in the *RV & Trailer Towing Guide*, available at your authorized dealer.

RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

Note: DO NOT tow a trailer during patrol or pursuit situations.

Note: Do not exceed the trailer weight for your vehicle configuration listed in the chart below.

Note: Make sure to take into consideration trailer frontal area. Do not exceed:

- 12 feet² (1.11 meters²) trailer frontal area on sedans.
- 20 feet² (1.86 meters²) trailer frontal area on utility vehicles.

Note: For high altitude operation, reduce the gross combined weight by 2% per 1000 feet (300 meters) starting at the 1000 foot (300 meter) elevation point.

Note: Certain states require electric trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight. The maximum trailer weights listed may be limited to this specified weight, as the vehicle's electrical system may not include the wiring connector needed to activate electric trailer brakes.

Your vehicle may tow a Class I or II trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight listed for your vehicle configuration on the following chart.

Powertrain	Maximum Trailer Weight - lb (kg)
3.5L TiVCT FWD	1000 (454)
3.5L TiVCT AWD	1000 (454)
3.5L GTDI AWD	1000 (454)
3.7L TiVCT FWD	2500 (1134)
3.7L TiVCT AWD	2500 (1134)

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Follow these guidelines for safe towing:

- Do not tow a trailer until your vehicle has been driven at least 1000 miles (1600 kilometers).
- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See your scheduled maintenance information.
- If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

For load specification terms found on the tire label and Safety Compliance label and for instructions on calculating your vehicle's load, refer to *Load limit* in the *Load Carrying* chapter.

Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of the vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Hitches

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle.

Distribute the trailer load so 10-15% of the total trailer weight is on the tongue.

Safety Chains

Note: Never attach safety chains to the bumper.

Always connect the safety chains to the hook retainers of the vehicle hitch.

To connect the safety chains, cross them under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes



WARNING: Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if installed properly and adjusted to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and Federal regulations.

The braking system of the tow vehicle is rated for operation at the GVWR not GCWR.

Separate functioning brake systems are required for safe control of towed vehicles and trailers weighing more than 1500 pounds (680 kilograms) when loaded.

Trailer Lamps

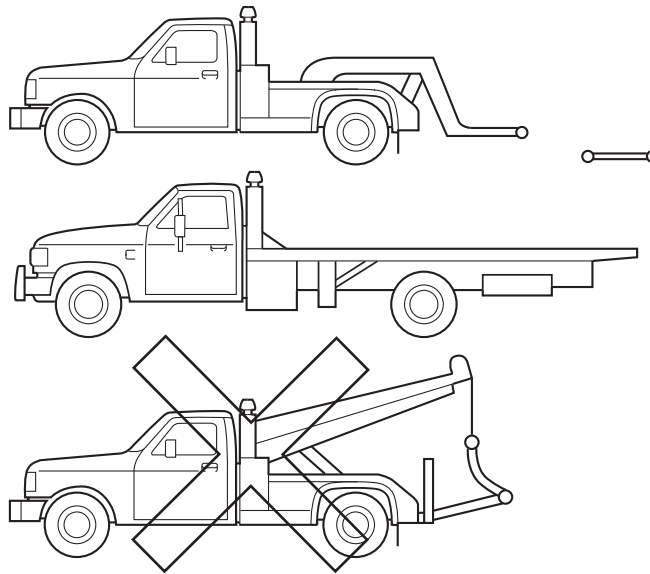
Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working. Contact your authorized dealer or trailer rental agency for proper instructions and equipment for hooking up the lamps.

Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing up to get the feel of the vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels will clear curbs and other obstacles.

When Towing a Trailer

- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 miles (800 kilometers).
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 miles (80 kilometers).
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the gearshift in position **P** to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission is equipped with a Grade Assist or Tow/Haul feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached; anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Avoid parking on a grade. However, if you must park on a grade:
 1. Turn the steering wheel to point the vehicle tires away from traffic flow.
 2. Set the vehicle parking brake.
 3. Place the automatic transmission in position **P** or manual transmission in a high gear.
 4. Place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels. (Chocks not equipped with vehicle.)

WRECKER TOWING

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. If the vehicle is towed incorrectly, or by any other means, vehicle damage may occur.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

Front-wheel drive (FWD) vehicles can be towed from the front if proper wheel lift equipment is used to raise the front wheels off the ground. The rear wheels can be left on the ground when towed in this fashion.

FWD vehicles can also be towed from the rear using wheel lift equipment; however, the front wheels need to be placed on a dolly to prevent damage to the transmission.

All-wheel drive (AWD) vehicles must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment, with all the wheels off the ground, to prevent damage to the transmission, AWD system or vehicle.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS**Emergency Towing**

In the event your vehicle becomes disabled (without access to wheel dollies, car-hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle), it can be flat-towed (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain/transmission configuration) under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission is placed in position **N**. See *Automatic transmission* in the *Transmission* chapter if you cannot move the transmission into **N**.
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 kilometers).

Recreational Towing

Note: Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See the *Climate Control* chapter.

Follow these guidelines for your specific powertrain combination to tow your vehicle for personal travel (such as behind a motor home or a truck). These guidelines are designed to prevent damage to your vehicle after it is hooked-up to the RV or tow dolly.

Front-wheel drive (FWD) vehicles can be towed with all four wheels on the ground or with the front wheels off the ground by using a tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider. If you are towing with all four wheels on the ground, refer to the towing instructions found at the end of this section.

All-wheel drive (AWD) vehicles can be towed with all four wheels on the ground or with all four wheels off the ground using a vehicle transport trailer. Do not tow your AWD vehicle with the front wheels off the ground (by using a tow dolly) and the rear wheels on the ground; this will cause damage to your AWD system. If you are using a vehicle transport trailer, follow the instruction specified by the equipment provider. If you are towing with all four wheels on the ground, refer to the towing instructions found at the end of this section.

If you tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground:

- Tow only in the forward direction.
- Release the parking brake.
- Place the transmission in N (Neutral).
- Do not exceed 65 mph (105 km/h).
- Start the engine and allow it to run for five minutes at the beginning of each day and every six hours thereafter. With the engine running and your foot on the brake, shift into D (Drive) and then into R (Reverse) before shifting back into N (Neutral).

BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 miles (480 kilometers). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unique driving characteristics. Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine. Do not tow during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers).

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

Fuel economy is affected by several things such as how you drive, the conditions you drive under and how you maintain your vehicle.

There are some things to keep in mind that may improve your fuel economy:

- Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion.
- Drive at steady speeds without stopping.
- Anticipate stops; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.
- Drive at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size.
- Use the recommended engine oil.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

There are also some things you may not want to do because they may reduce your fuel economy:

- Sudden or hard accelerations.
- Rev the engine before turning it off.
- Idle for periods longer than one minute.
- Warm up your vehicle on cold mornings.
- Use the air conditioner or front defroster.
- Use the speed control in hilly terrain.
- Rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.

- Drive a heavily loaded vehicle or tow a trailer.
- Carry unnecessary weight (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kg] of weight carried).
- Add particular accessories to your vehicle (e.g. bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski racks).
- Drive with the wheels out of alignment.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER



WARNING: Drive through water in an emergency only, and not as part of normal driving.

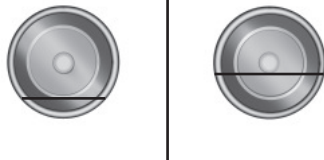


WARNING: Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

Note: Driving through deep water may allow water into the transmission or air intake and can cause internal vehicle damage or cause it to stall.

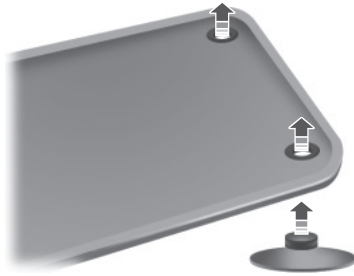
Note: Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks).



When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine's air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall.

Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.

FLOOR MATS (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

- Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.
- Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to ensure mats do not shift out of position.
- Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
- Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.
- Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.
- Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



WARNING *(Continued)*

- Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing loss of control of vehicle.
- To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.
- To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE**Vehicles Sold in the U.S. : Getting Roadside Assistance**

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24-hours a day, seven days a week
- for the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your owner's manual portfolio.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles that have been supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- battery jump start.
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- fuel delivery – Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5 liters) of gasoline or 5.0 gallons (18.9 liters) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Fuel delivery service is limited to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- winch out – available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing – Ford and Lincoln eligible vehicles towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56 kilometers) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56 kilometers) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56 kilometers).

Trailers shall be covered up to \$200 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

Vehicles Sold in the U.S. : Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is found in the owner's manual portfolio in the glove compartment.

U.S. Ford vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 miles (56 kilometers). To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers will be asked to submit their original receipts.

Vehicles Sold in Canada : Getting Roadside Assistance

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

Vehicles Sold in Canada : Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In Canada, the card is found in the warranty information in the glove box.

Canadian Roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage. Please see your warranty information or visit our website at www.ford.ca for information on Canadian services and benefits.

Canadian customers who need to obtain roadside information, call 1-800-665-2006 or visit our website at www.ford.ca.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS



The hazard flasher control is located on the instrument panel by the radio. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash.
- Press the flasher control again to turn them off.

Note: With extended use, the flashers may run down your 12 volt battery.

FUEL CUT-OFF SWITCH



WARNING: Failure to inspect and if necessary repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle is equipped with a fuel pump shut-off feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shut-off.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle by doing the following:

1. Turn the ignition off and wait ten seconds.
2. Turn the ignition on.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to re-enable fuel pump.

JUMP-STARTING THE VEHICLE



WARNING: The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.



WARNING: Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the automatic transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may exhibit a combination of firm and soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

Preparing Your Vehicle

Note: Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Note: Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.

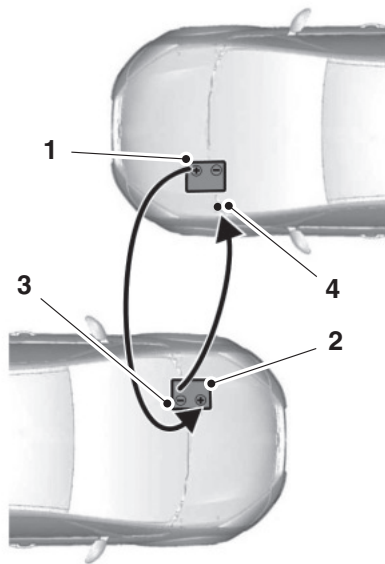
1. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles do not touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.
2. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
3. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

! WARNING: Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

Note: Do not attach the negative (-) cable to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points.

Note: In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.

3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.

4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor or fuel injection system.

Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

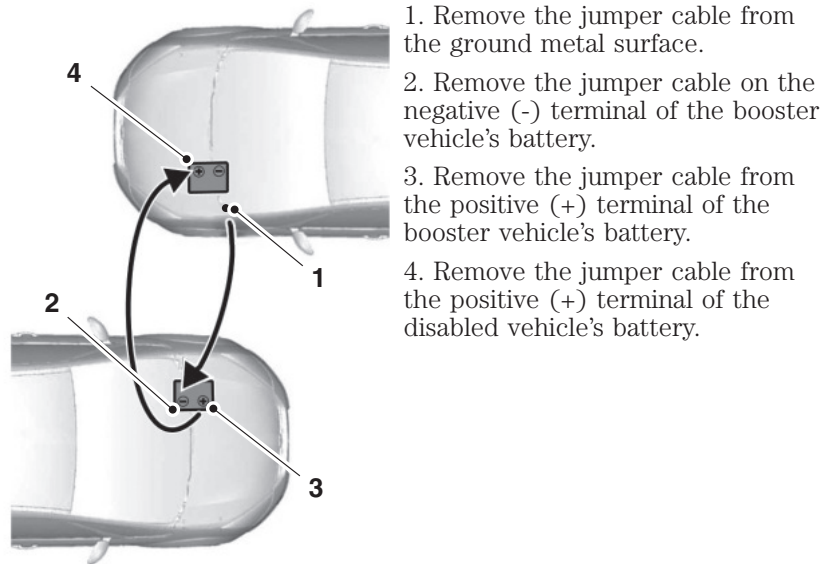
Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at a moderately increased speed.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Note: In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can relearn its idle conditions.

GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training, equipment or both, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

Away from home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

Mailing address

Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48121

Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)

Online

Additional information and resources are available online at www.fordowner.com

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Manuals
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans

- Ford Genuine Accessories
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

Mailing address

Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

Telephone

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

Online

www.ford.ca

Additional assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center

In order to help you serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Your telephone number (home and business)
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located
- The vehicle's current odometer reading

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18000 miles (29 000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time)

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step

procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the *Getting the services you need* section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:

**BBB AUTO LINE
3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600
Arlington, Virginia 22201**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

Note: Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

**UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM
(CANADA ONLY)**

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit www.camvap.ca.

GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS & GLOBAL INITIATIVES
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.

Telephone: (313) 594-4857

For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), America Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673).

FAX: (313) 390-0804

Email: expcac@ford.com

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Puerto Rico, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Ford International Business Development Inc.
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 11957
Caparra Heights Station
San Juan, Puerto Rico 00922-1957
Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673)
FAX: (313) 390-0804
Email: prcac@ford.com
www.ford.com.pr

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Ford Middle East
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 21470
Dubai, United Arab Emirates
Telephone: +971 4 3326084
Toll-Free Number for the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: 800 8971409
Local Telephone Number for Kuwait: 24810575
FAX: +971 4 3327299
Email: menacac@ford.com
www.me.ford.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations & Global Growth Initiatives by emailing expcac@ford.com.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.

ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, Michigan 48170
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:
www.helminc.com.

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

Obtaining a French Owner's Manual

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety

Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator
1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast
Washington, D.C. 20590

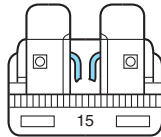
You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, using their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510, or online at: <https://wwwapps.tc.gc.ca/Saf-Sec-Sur/7/PCDB-BDPP/Index.aspx>.

CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses



If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Note: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

Standard Fuse Amperage Rating and Color

COLOR					
Fuse rating	Mini fuses	Standard fuses	Maxi fuses	Cartridge maxi fuses	Fuse link cartridge
2A	Grey	Grey	—	—	—
3A	Violet	Violet	—	—	—
4A	Pink	Pink	—	—	—
5A	Tan	Tan	—	—	—
7.5A	Brown	Brown	—	—	—
10A	Red	Red	—	—	—
15A	Blue	Blue	—	—	—
20A	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Blue	Blue
25A	Natural	Natural	—	Natural	Natural
30A	Green	Green	Green	Pink	Pink
40A	—	—	Orange	Green	Green
50A	—	—	Red	Red	Red
60A	—	—	Blue	Yellow	Yellow
70A	—	—	Tan	—	Brown
80A	—	—	Natural	Black	Black

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART**Power Distribution Box**

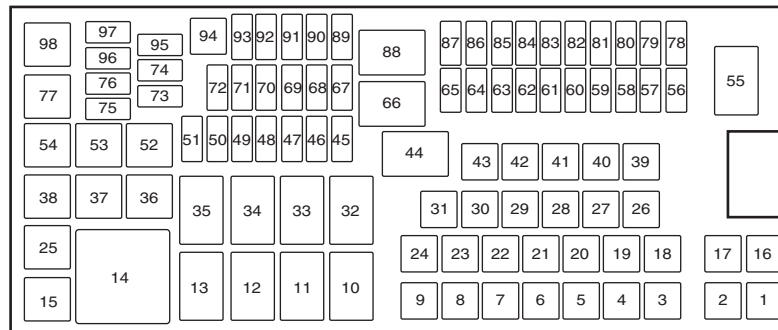
WARNING: Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to *Changing the vehicle battery* in the *Maintenance* chapter.



The high-current fuses are coded as follows:

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
1	50A**	Rear powerpoint tap feed 1
2	50A**	Rear powerpoint tap feed 2
3	—	Not used
4	30A**	Wiper motor relay
5	50A**	Anti-lock brake system pump
6	40A**	Center console 6 way B+ feed 2

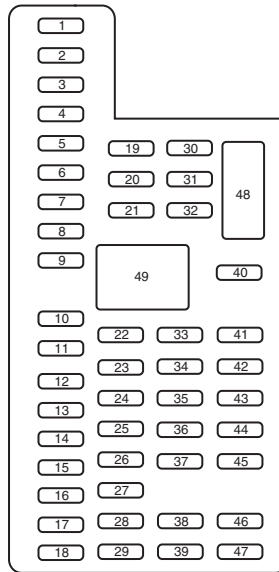
Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
7	—	Not used
8	—	Not used
9	—	Not used
10	—	Trunk/liftgate release relay
11	—	Rear window defroster relay, Mirror relay (Sedan)
12	—	Run/start relay
13	—	Starter motor relay
14	—	Engine cooling fan #2 high speed relay
15	—	Fuel pump relay
16	40A**	Center console 6 way B+ feed 3
17	—	Not used
18	40A**	Front blower motor relay
19	30A**	Starter relay
20	20A**	Center console powerpoint #2
21	—	Not used
22	—	Not used
23	30A**	Driver power seat
24	40A**	Police run/start relay
25	—	Not used
26	40A**	Rear window defrost relay
27	20A**	Center console powerpoint #1
28	—	Not used
29	40A**	Engine cooling fan #1 high speed power, Engine cooling fan #1 and #2 low speed primary fuse
30	40A**	Engine cooling fan #2 high speed fuse
31	25A**	Engine cooling fan #1 and #2 low speed secondary fuse

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
32	—	Auxiliary blower motor relay (Utility)
33	—	Engine cooling fan #1 and #2 low speed relay #2
34	—	Blower motor relay
35	—	Engine cooling fan #1 high speed relay, Engine cooling fan #1 and #2 low speed relay #1
36	—	Not used
37	—	Not used
38	—	Not used
39	40A**	Auxiliary blower motor (Utility)
40	40A**	Center console 6 way B+ feed 1
41	—	Not used
42	30A**	Passenger seat (Sedan)
43	40A**	Anti-lock brake system valves (Utility)
	20A**	Anti-lock brake system valves (Sedan)
44	—	Rear washer relay (Utility)
45	—	Not used
46	—	Not used
47	—	Not used
48	—	Not used
49	—	Not used
50	15A*	Heated mirrors
51	—	Not used
52	—	Not used
53	—	Not used
54	—	Not used
55	—	Wiper relay
56	—	Not used

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
57	—	Not used
58	10A*	Alternator A-line
59	10A*	Brake on/off switch
60	—	Not used
61	—	Not used
62	10A*	Air conditioner clutch relay
63	15A*	Trailer tow stop/turn lamps (Utility)
64	15A*	Rear wipers (Utility)
65	30A*	Fuel pump relay
66	—	Powertrain control module relay
67	20A*	Oxygen sensor heater, Mass airflow sensor, Variable camshaft timing solenoid valve, Canister vent solenoid, Canister purge solenoid
68	20A*	Ignition coils
69	20A*	Vehicle power #1 (Powertrain control module)
70	15A*	(Sedan) — Air conditioner variable compressor control, Fan control relay coils, Variable air conditioning compressor, Auxiliary transmission warmup, Turbo charge waste-gate control, Electronic compressor bypass valve, All-wheel drive module, Positive crankcase ventilation heater
	10A*	(Utility) — same as above
71	—	Not used
72	—	Not used
73	20A*	Center console run/start feed #1
74	20A*	Center console run/start feed #2

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
75	—	Not used
76	—	Not used
77	—	Not used
78	—	Not used
79	—	Not used
80	25A*	Police rear flasher / Package tray lighting access circuit (Sedan)
81	20A*	Spot lights
82	15A*	Rear washer (Utility)
83	—	Not used
84	20A*	Trailer tow park lamps (Utility)
85	—	Not used
86	7.5A*	Powertrain control module keep-alive power and relay, Canister vent solenoid
87	5A*	Run/start relay coil
88	—	Run/start relay
89	5A*	Front blower relay coil, Electrical power assist steering module
90	10A*	Powertrain control module run/start
91	—	Not used
92	10A*	Anti-lock brake system module
93	5A*	Rear window defroster relay, Run/start relay, Trunk release relay
94	30A**	Passenger compartment fuse panel run/start
95	2A*	Center console start feed
96	—	Not used
97	—	Not used
98	—	Air conditioner clutch relay
*Mini Fuses **Cartridge Fuses		

Passenger compartment fuse panel



The fuse panel is located under the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

The fuses are coded as follows:

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
1	30A	Driver side front window, Rear windows (Sedan)
2	15A	Driver seat switch, 14 way B+ feed #1
3	30A	Not used (spare)
4	10A	Demand lamps battery saver relay, Glove box lamp, Visor lamps (Utility), Task lamp
5	20A	14 Way B+ feed #3
6	5A	Not used (spare)

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
7	7.5A	Not used (spare)
8	—	Not used
9	10A	SYNC [®] , Displays, Electronic finish panel, Radio frequency transceiver module (Sedan)
10	10A	Run accessory relay
11	10A	Cluster (Utility)
12	15A	Backlighting LED, Interior lighting, Backlighting feed
13	15A	Right rear stop/turn, Right turn (Sedan), Right rear police fuse/relay box
14	15A	Left rear stop/turn, Left turn (Sedan), Left rear police fuse/relay box
15	15A	Stop lamp, Backup lamp, High-mounted stop lamp (Utility)
16	10A	Right front low beam
17	10A	Left front low beam
18	10A	Brake shift interlock, Powertrain control module wakeup
19	20A	Police B+ #8 access circuit center console, 14 Way B+ feed #2
20	20A	All lock motor relay, Driver lock motor relay
21	—	Not used
22	20A	Horn relay
23	15A	Steering wheel control module logic, Instrument cluster, Headlamp switch (Utility)
24	15A	Steering wheel control module, Datalink

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
25	15A	Liftgate release (Utility)
26	5A	Ignition switch (Sedan), Frequency transceiver module (Utility)
27	20A	Not used (spare)
28	15A	Ignition switch (Utility)
29	20A	Radio, Global positioning system module
30	15A	Front park lamps
31	5A	Brake signal for police equipment
32	15A	Master window/mirror switch, Lock switch illumination, Police console inline delayed accessory feed, Delayed accessory feed
33	10A	Occupant classification module (Utility)
34	10A	Reverse park aid module, Blind spot monitor module, Rear video camera
35	5A	Motorized humidity sensor, Overdrive cancel switch (Low gear switch feed), Column shift – low gear, Headlamp switch (Utility)
36	10A	Not used (spare)
37	10A	Restraints control module (Utility)
38	10A	Auto-dimming mirror, Rear camera display mirror
39	15A	High beam headlamp shutters
40	10A	Rear park lamps, License plate lamps (Utility)

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
41	7.5A	Occupant classification sensor, Restraint control module (Utility), Brake shift interlock (Utility)
42	5A	Police 4-button steering wheel control module
43	10A	Not used (spare)
44	10A	Not used (spare)
45	5A	Not used (spare)
46	10A	Climate control module
47	15A	Not used (spare)
48	30A Circuit Breaker	Window switches
49	Relay	Delayed accessory

GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

To help you service your vehicle, we provide *scheduled maintenance information* which makes tracking routine service easy.

If your vehicle requires professional service, your authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key (if equipped).
3. Block the wheels.

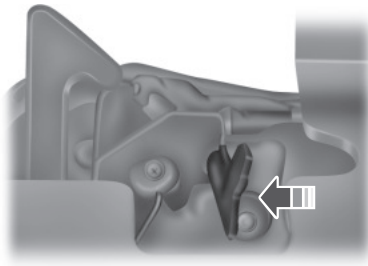
Working with the Engine On

WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Block the wheels.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD**Sedan**

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the bottom of the instrument panel near the steering column.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle and release the auxiliary latch that is located under the front center of the hood.

3. Lift the hood.

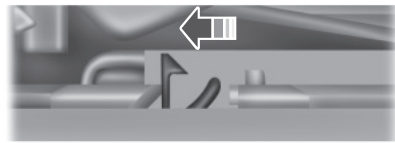
4. Lower the hood and allow it to drop the last 8 to 11 inches (20 to 30 centimeters).

Note: Make sure the hood is properly closed.

Utility



1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the bottom left corner of the instrument panel.



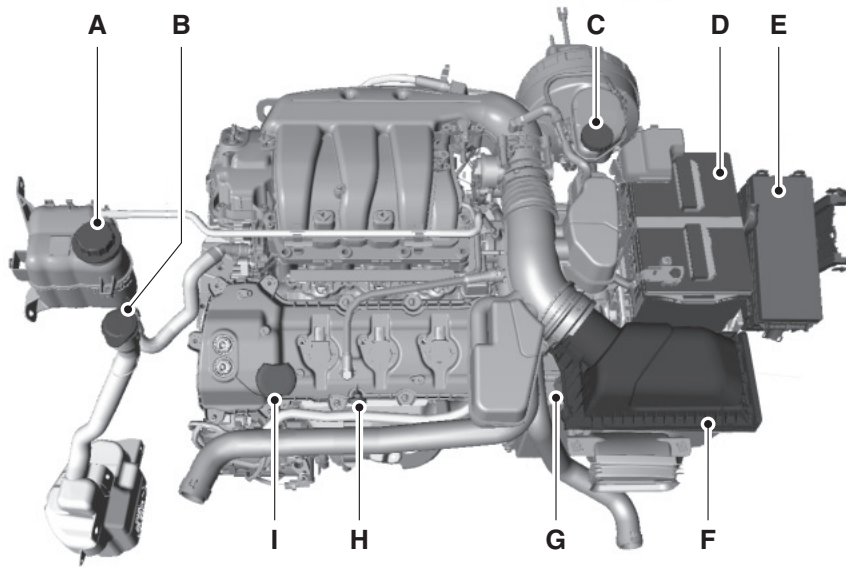
2. Go to the front of the vehicle and release the auxiliary latch that is located under the front center of the hood.

3. Raise the hood and support it with the prop rod.

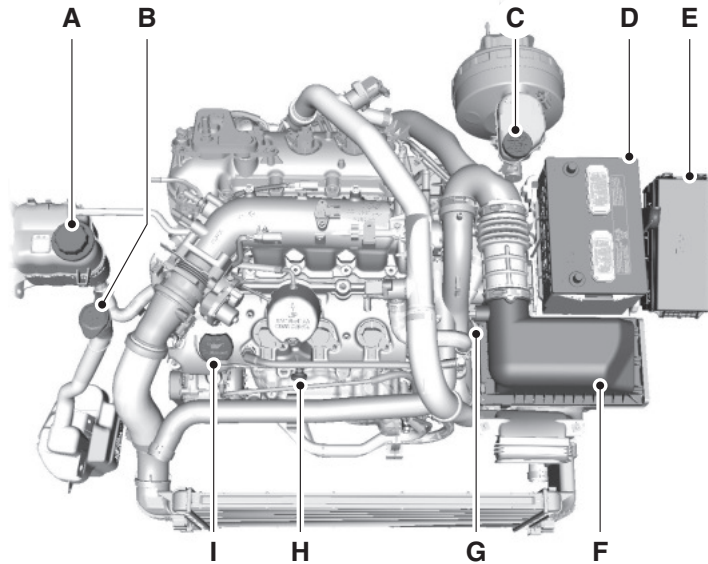
4. Lower and secure the prop rod in the clip.

5. Lower the hood and allow it to drop the last 8 to 11 inches (20 to 30 centimeters).

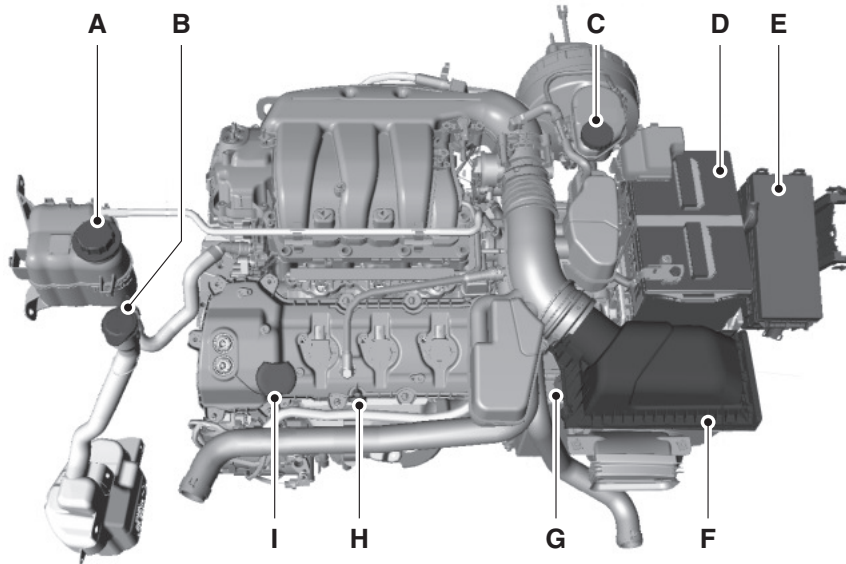
Note: Make sure the hood is properly closed.

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW**3.5L V6 engine**

- A. Engine coolant reservoir
- B. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
- C. Brake fluid reservoir
- D. Battery
- E. Power distribution box
- F. Air filter assembly
- G. Automatic transmission fluid dipstick
- H. Engine oil dipstick
- I. Engine oil filler cap

3.5L V6 EcoBoost® engine

- A. Engine coolant reservoir
- B. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
- C. Brake fluid reservoir
- D. Battery
- E. Power distribution box
- F. Air filter assembly
- G. Automatic transmission fluid dipstick
- H. Engine oil dipstick
- I. Engine oil filler cap

3.7L V6 engine

- A. Engine coolant reservoir
- B. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
- C. Brake fluid reservoir
- D. Battery
- E. Power distribution box
- F. Air filter assembly
- G. Automatic transmission fluid dipstick
- H. Engine oil dipstick
- I. Engine oil filler cap

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK

- A. – MIN
- B. – MAX

**ENGINE OIL CHECK**

Note: Check the level before starting the engine.

Note: Make sure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks.

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the level is at the MIN mark, add oil immediately.

Adding Engine Oil

Note: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Note: Do not add engine oil further than the MAX mark. Oil levels above the MAX mark may cause engine damage.



Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Council (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See *Capacities and Specifications* for more information.
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK**Checking the Engine Coolant**

Note: If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, refer to *Maintenance and Specifications* section of your *Diesel Supplement*

The concentration and level of engine coolant should be checked at the intervals listed in *scheduled maintenance information*.

Note: Make sure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the coolant reservoir.

The coolant concentration should be maintained within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30 degrees Fahrenheit (-34 degrees Centigrade) and -34 degrees Fahrenheit (-37 degrees Centigrade).

Note: For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer such as Rotunda tool 300-ROB75240 available from your dealer. Ford does not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentrations.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.

If the level is at the MIN mark, add coolant immediately.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant/antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

Adding Engine Coolant

WARNING: Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.



WARNING: Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the MAX mark.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets or cooling system sealants/additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling and/or heating systems. This damage would not be covered under your vehicle's warranty.

Note: During normal vehicle operation, the engine coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the engine coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the engine coolant has degraded nor does it require the engine coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the engine coolant to be replaced.

- DO NOT MIX different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Make sure the correct coolant is used. Mixing of engine coolants may harm your engine's cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty.
- In case of emergency, a large amount of water without engine coolant may be added in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained, chemically cleaned with Motorcraft® Premium Cooling System Flush, and refilled with prediluted engine coolant as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant). Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure will escape as you unscrew the cap.

Add prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See *Capacities and Specifications* for more information.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the proper level.

Recycled engine coolant

Ford Motor Company does NOT recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.



Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to have a Ford authorized dealer increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% will provide improved freeze point protection. Increased engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- It may be necessary to have a Ford authorized dealer decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% will provide improved overheat protection. Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion/freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted engine coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

Engine fluid temperature management (EcoBoost engine only)

WARNING: To reduce the risk of collision and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the fluid temperatures reduce.

Your vehicle has been designed to pull a trailer, but because of the added load, the vehicle's engine may temporarily reach higher temperatures during severe operating conditions such as ascending a long or steep grade while pulling a trailer in hot ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice your engine coolant temperature gauge needle move toward the H (hot) and the POWER REDUCED TO LOWER TEMP message may appear on the message center.

You may notice a reduction in the vehicle's speed caused by reduced engine power. Your vehicle has been designed to enter this mode if certain high temperature/high load conditions take place in order to manage the engine's fluid temperatures. The amount of speed reduction will depend on the vehicle loading, towing, grade, ambient temperature, and other factors. If this occurs, there is no need to pull off the road. The vehicle can continue to be driven while this message is active.

The air conditioning may also cycle on and off during severe operating conditions to protect overheating of the engine. When the engine coolant temperature decreases to a more normal operating temperature, the air conditioning will turn on once again.

If you notice any of the following:

- the engine coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red (hot) area
 - the coolant temperature warning light illuminates
 - the service engine soon indicator illuminates
1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and place the vehicle in P (Park).
 2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle moves away from the H range. After several minutes, if this does not happen, follow the remaining steps.
 3. Turn the engine off and wait for it to cool before checking the coolant level.



WARNING: Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

4. If the coolant level is normal, you may restart your engine and continue on.
5. If the coolant is low, add coolant, restart the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer. See *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter for more information.

Refer to fail-safe cooling for additional information.

What you should know about fail-safe cooling

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The “fail-safe” distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

How fail-safe cooling works

If the engine begins to overheat:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the red (hot) area.



- The service engine soon indicator will illuminate.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

When fail-safe mode is activated

WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only.

Operate the vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring the vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, the vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive the vehicle with caution. The vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed

operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage, therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine.
2. Arrange for the vehicle to be taken to an authorized dealer.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.



WARNING: Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot. The hot coolant is under pressure and may cause serious burns.

5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

Note: Driving the vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK



WARNING: The dipstick cap and surrounding components may be hot; gloves are recommended.

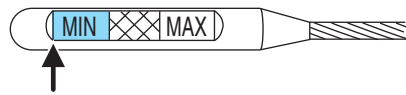
Note: Automatic transmission fluid expands when warmed. To obtain an accurate fluid check, drive the vehicle until it is warmed up (approximately 20 miles [30 km]). If your vehicle has been operated for an extended period at high speeds, in city traffic during hot weather or pulling a trailer, the vehicle should be turned off until normal operating temperatures are reached to allow the fluid to cool before checking. Depending on vehicle use, cooling times could take up to 30 minutes or longer.

Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

1. Drive the vehicle 20 miles (30 km) or until it reaches normal operating temperature.
2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake.
3. With the parking brake engaged and your foot on the brake pedal, start the engine and move the gearshift lever through all of the gear ranges. Allow a minimum of 10 seconds for each gear to engage.

4. Latch the gearshift lever in P (Park) and leave the engine running.
5. Remove the dipstick, wiping it clean with a clean, dry lint free rag. If necessary, refer to *Under hood overview* in this chapter for the location of the dipstick.
6. Install the dipstick making sure it is fully seated in the filler tube by turning it to the locked position.
7. Remove the dipstick and inspect the fluid level. The fluid should be in the designated areas for normal operating temperature.

Low fluid level

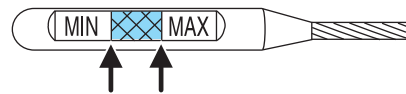


If the fluid level is below the MIN range of the dipstick, add fluid to reach the hash mark level. **Note:** If the fluid level is below the MIN level,

do not drive the vehicle. An underfill condition may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.

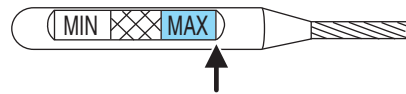
Correct fluid level

The transmission fluid should be checked at normal operating temperature 180°F-200°F (82°C-93°C) on a level surface. The normal operating temperature can be reached after approximately 20 miles (30 km) of driving.



The transmission fluid level should be targeted within the cross-hatch area if at normal operating temperature 180°F-200°F (82°C-93°C) .

High fluid level



If the fluid level is above the MAX range of the dipstick, remove fluid to reach the hashmark level. **Note:** Fluid level above the MAX level may

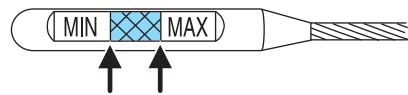
cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.

High fluid levels can be caused by an overheating condition. If your vehicle has been operated for an extended period at high speeds, in city traffic during hot weather or pulling a trailer, the vehicle should be turned off until normal operating temperatures are reached. Depending on vehicle use, cooling times could take up to 30 minutes or longer.

Adjusting automatic transmission fluid levels

Before adding any fluid, make sure the correct type is used. The type of fluid used is normally indicated on the dipstick and also in the *Capacities and Specifications* chapter.

Note: Use of a non-approved automatic transmission fluid may cause internal transmission component damage.



If necessary, add fluid in 1/2 pint (250 ml) increments through the filler tube until the level is correct.



If an overfill occurs, excess fluid should be removed by an authorized dealer.

Note: An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

Note: Police pursuits, involving hard braking, result in high temperatures in the brake system - including the brake fluid. Over time, repeated exposure to high brake temperatures can degrade brake fluid, potentially reducing its boiling point. A lower boiling point could cause long brake pedal travel and a loss of braking confidence during subsequent pursuit driving. Ford recommends that police fleets replace the brake fluid at every brake pad service interval according to the service procedure. Brake fluid should be replaced on vehicles involved in high speed pursuits with heavy brake usage.

POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power steering (EPS) system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

WASHER FLUID CHECK

WARNING: If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. See the technical specifications chart in the *Capacities and Specifications* chapter.

Note: The front and rear washer systems are supplied from the same reservoir.

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

CHANGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.



WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Note:** Wash hands after handling.

Note: If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

Note: Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.

The Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time. This will minimize the discharge of your battery during storage.

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance. To begin this process:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Put the gearshift in P (Park), turn off all accessories and start the engine.
3. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
5. Turn the A/C on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

6. Drive the vehicle to complete the relearning process.

- The vehicle may need to be driven 10 miles (16 km) or more to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.
- **Note:** If you do not allow the engine to relearn its idle trim, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and radio settings must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

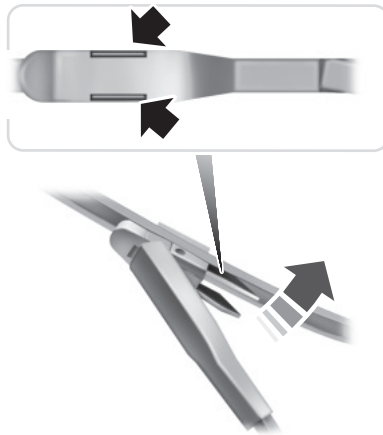
CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES



1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.
2. Squeeze the locking tabs to release the blade from the arm and pull the blade away from the arm to remove it.
3. Attach the new blade to the arm and snap it into place.

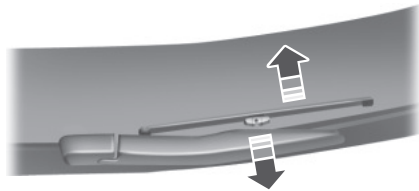
Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

To prolong the life of the wiper blades, it is highly recommended to scrape off the ice on the windshield before turning on the wipers. The layer of ice has many sharp edges and can damage the micro edge of the wiper rubber element.

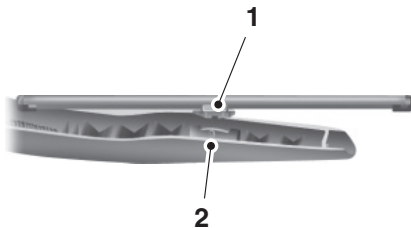
Changing the rear window wiper blade (if equipped)

To replace the rear wiper blade:



1. Press the wiper blade against the glass with one hand and hold it.

2. Pull the wiper arm away from the wiper blade to separate.



3. To attach the new wiper to the wiper arm, align the slot (1) and cross pin (2) and firmly press the wiper arm into the wiper blade until a click is heard.

If you find this procedure too difficult, please see your dealer.

AIR FILTER CHECK



WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

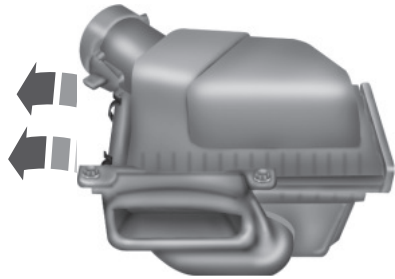
When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. Refer to *Motorcraft® Part Numbers* in the Capacities and Specifications chapter.

For EcoBoost equipped vehicles: When servicing the air cleaner, it is important that no foreign material enter the air induction system. The engine and turbocharger are susceptible to damage from even small particles.

Refer to *Scheduled Maintenance* for the appropriate intervals for changing the air filter element.

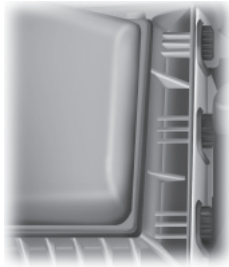
Note: Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

Changing the air filter element



3.5L V6 engine shown, 3.5L EcoBoost™/3.7L engines similar

1. Release the clamps that secure the air filter housing cover.
2. Carefully separate the two halves of the air filter housing.
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
4. Wipe the air filter housing and cover clean to remove any dirt or debris and to ensure good sealing.
5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.



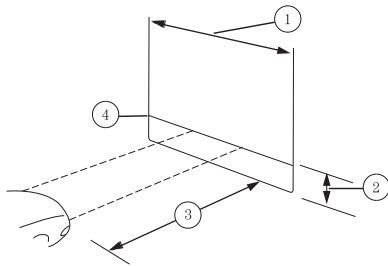
6. Replace the air filter housing cover and secure the clamps. Be sure that the air cleaner cover tabs are engaged into the slots of the air cleaner housing.

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer.

Vertical Aim Adjustment

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.

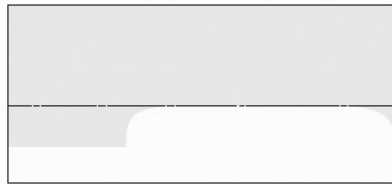


- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (4) Horizontal reference line

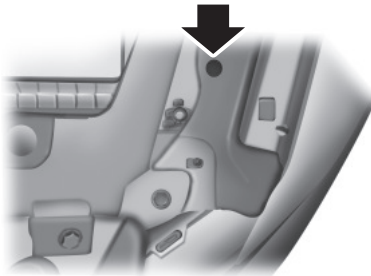
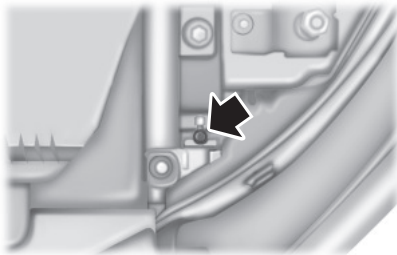
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.

To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.



On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, the headlamp will need to be adjusted.

Sedan:**Utility:**

4. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips number 2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.

5. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

HORIZONTAL AIM IS NOT REQUIRED FOR THIS VEHICLE AND IS NOT ADJUSTABLE.

CHANGING A BULB**Lamp Assembly Condensation**

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

These are examples of acceptable condensation:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets).
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

These are examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak):

- Water puddle inside the lamp.
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens.

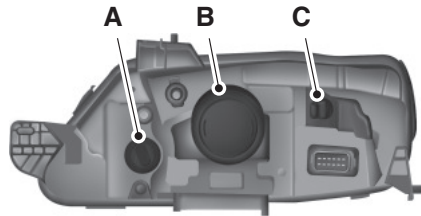
Take your vehicle to a dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

Replacing headlamp bulbs



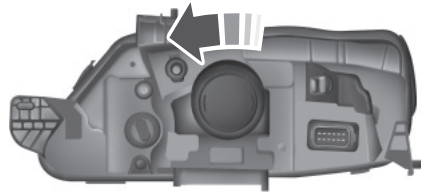
WARNING: Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Note: If the bulb is accidentally touched, it should be cleaned with rubbing alcohol before being used.



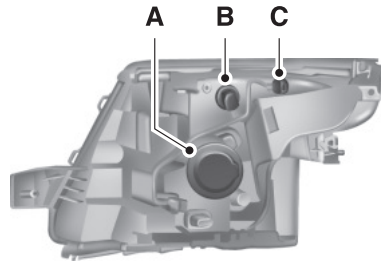
Headlamp (Sedan):

- A. Front parking lamp/turn signal bulb
- B. Low/High beam headlamp bulb
- C. Sidemarker bulb



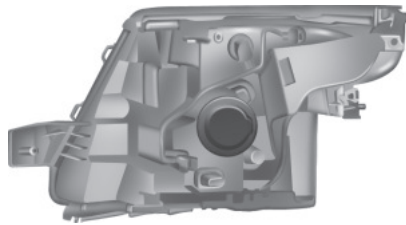
Low/High beam bulbs (Sedan)

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.
2. Reach in behind the headlamp assembly to access the bulbs and connectors.
3. Remove service cap.
4. Remove bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.



Headlamp (Utility):

- A. Low/High beam headlamp bulb
- B. Front parking lamp/turn signal bulb
- C. Sidemarker bulb



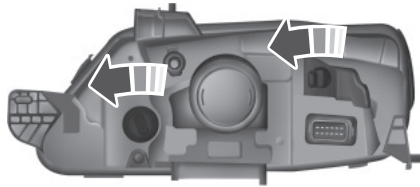
Low/High beam bulbs (Utility)

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.
2. Reach in behind the headlamp assembly to access the bulbs and connectors.
3. Remove service cap.



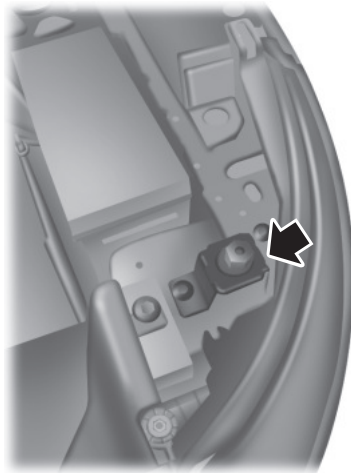
4. Turn the bulb base counterclockwise and remove it.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

Reverse steps to reinstall bulb(s).

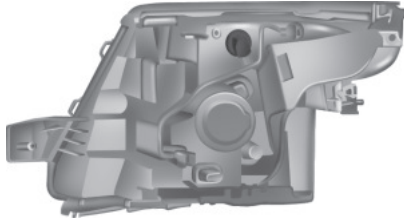
Front parking lamp/turn signal/sidemarkers bulbs without wig-wags (Sedan)

1. Make sure headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.
2. Reach in behind the headlamp assembly to access the bulb sockets and connectors.
3. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove from the lamp assembly.

4. Carefully pull the bulb out of the socket and push in the new bulb. Install the new bulbs in reverse order from the steps above.

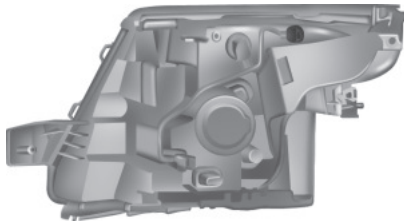
Front parking lamp/turn signal and sidemarkers bulbs without wig-wags (Utility)

1. Make sure that the headlamp control is in the off position.
2. Open the hood.
3. Remove the hood overslam bumper tower to service park/turn or sidemarkers bulbs (if needed).

Replacing front parking lamp/turn signal bulbs without wig-wags (Utility)

1. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.
2. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

Reverse steps to reinstall bulb(s).

Replacing sidemarker bulbs (Utility)

1. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.
2. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

Reverse steps to reinstall bulb(s).

Front parking lamp/turn signal flashers (wig-wags) (If equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with an LED front parking lamp/turn signal flashers (wig-wags). It is designed to last the life of the vehicle. If replacement is required, it is recommended that you see your authorized dealer.

Note: Use of the wig-wag feature overrides normal operation of the park/turn indicator.

Spot lights (If equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a spot light attached to one or both of the A-Pillars. It is designed to last the life of the vehicle. If replacement is required, it is recommended that you see your authorized dealer.

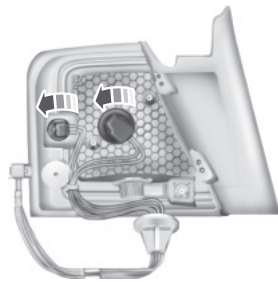
Replacing stop/tail/turn and sidemarker lamp bulbs (Sedan)

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position and open the trunk.



2. Remove the press pin and cargo net fastener (if equipped) and carefully pull the carpet away to expose the backside of the tail lamp assembly.

3. Remove the nut and washer assemblies, then pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.



A. *Side marker lamp*

B. *Stop/tail/turn lamp*

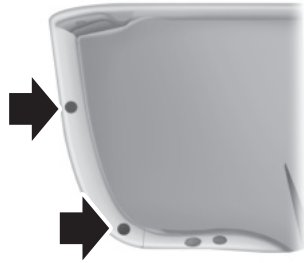
3. Remove the bulb socket by rotating it counterclockwise, then pulling it out of the lamp assembly.

4. Pull the bulb straight from the socket.

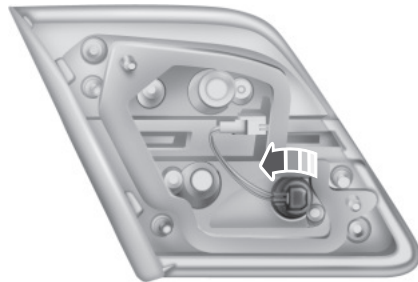
Install new bulb(s) in reverse order.

Replacing backup lamp bulbs (Sedan)

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position.



2. Remove the deck lid trim panel press pins and carefully pull the panel away to expose the backside of the backup lamp assembly.



3. Remove bulb socket by rotating it counterclockwise, then pull it out of the lamp assembly.



4. Pull the bulb straight from the socket.

5. Install the new bulb in reverse order.

Replacing high-mount brake lamp bulbs (Sedan)

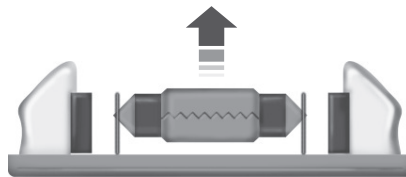
Your vehicle is equipped with an LED high-mount brake lamp. It is designed to last the life of the vehicle. If replacement is required, it is recommended that you see your authorized dealer.

Replacing license plate lamp bulbs (Sedan)

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position.



2. Remove the two screws from the license plate lamp assembly.



3. Carefully pull the bulb out from the contacts.

Install new bulb(s) in reverse order.

Replacing supplemental park lamp bulbs (Sedan)

Your vehicle is equipped with an LED supplemental park lamp. It is designed to last the life of the vehicle. If replacement is required, it is recommended that you see your authorized dealer.

Replacing turn/backup lamp bulbs (Utility)

The turn/backup lamp bulbs are located in the same area of the tail lamp assembly, one below the other. Follow the same steps to replace these bulbs:



1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the liftgate to expose the lamp assembly bolts.

2. Remove the two bolts covers using a standard flat tip screwdriver.

3. Remove the two bolts from the lamp assembly.

4. Carefully remove the lamp assembly away from the vehicle by pulling the assembly straight out to expose the bulb socket.



5. Remove the bulb socket from the lamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise.

6. Pull bulb straight out of socket.

7. Install the new bulb in reverse order.

Carefully install the tail lamp assembly on the vehicle by securing the lamp assembly with two bolts. Reinstall bolt covers.

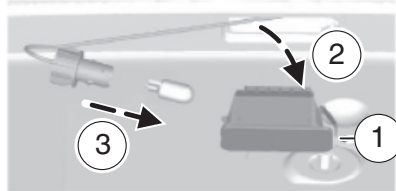
Replacing tail/brake lamp bulbs (Utility)

For bulb replacement, see your authorized dealer.

Replacing high-mount brake lamp bulb (Utility)

Your vehicle is equipped with an LED center high-mount stop lamp located in the spoiler. It is designed to last the life of the vehicle. If replacement is required, see your authorized dealer.

Replacing license plate lamp bulb (Utility)



1. Carefully release the spring clip (1).

2. Remove the lamp (2).

3. Remove the bulb (3).

Reverse steps to reinstall bulb.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized "D.O.T." for North America and an "E" for Europe to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

Function	Number of bulbs	Trade number
Low/high beam headlamp	2	HIR2 (Sedan)
		HB3 (Utility)
Front park/turn lamp (without wig-wag)	2	3457AK (amber) (Sedan)
		3457K (Utility)
* Front park/turn/wig-wag lamp	2	LED
Sidemarker lamp (front)	2	168 (Sedan)
		W5W (Utility)
Sidemarker lamp (rear) (Sedan)	2	168
Stop/tail/turn lamp (Sedan)	2	3157K
* Tail/brake lamp (Utility)	2	LED
Rear turn lamp (Utility)	2	WY21W (amber)
Backup lamp	2	921 (Sedan)
		W21W (Utility)
License plate lamp	2	C5W (Sedan)
		W5W (Utility)
* High-mount brake lamp	1	LED
* Supplemental park lamp (Sedan)	2	LED
Front map lamp	2	W5WL (Sedan)
		168 (T10) (Utility)
* Third row cargo lamp (Utility)	1	LED
All replacement bulbs are clear in color except where noted.		
To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer.		
* To replace these lights - see your authorized dealer.		

GENERAL INFORMATION

Your Ford or Lincoln authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

- Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)
- Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)
- Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)
- Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)
- Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)
- Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)
- Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)
- Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)
- Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada only) [CXC-37-(A, B, D or F)]
- Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (U.S. only) (ZC-32-A)
- Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)
- Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)
- Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)
- Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)
- Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.

- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle's paintwork and trim over time. Use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.
- **Note:** Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.

Exterior Chrome

Note: Never use abrasive materials such as steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.

Note: Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels and wheel covers.

- Wash the vehicle first, using cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash.
- Use Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner. Apply the product as you would a wax to clean bumpers and other chrome parts; allow the cleaner to dry for a few minutes, then wipe off the haze with a clean, dry rag.
- Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.
- **Note:** Using other non-recommended cleaners can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Cleaning Plastic Exterior Parts

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts.

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft® Detail Wash.
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover.

WAXING

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will “gray” or stain the parts over time.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver's door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

The windows and wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may cause squeaking or chatter noise from the blades, and streaking and smearing of the windshield. To clean these items, follow these tips:

- The windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner.
- The wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate in the U.S., or Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid in Canada. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.
- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches.
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.

If you cannot remove those streaks after cleaning with the glass cleaner or if the wipers chatter and move in a jerky motion, clean the outer surface of the windshield and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaning solution. After cleaning, rinse the windshield and wiper blades with clean water. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse the windshield with water.

Note: Do not use sharp objects, such as a razor blade, to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals, as it may cause damage to the rear window defroster's heated grid lines.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.

- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS



WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp, white cotton cloth, then use a clean and dry white cotton cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.

If a staining liquid like coffee/juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces, clean as follows:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, white, cotton cloth.
2. Wipe the surface with a damp, clean, white cotton cloth. For more thorough cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. If the spot cannot be completely cleaned by this method, the area may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
3. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, white, cotton cloth and press the cloth onto the soiled area—allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.

4. Remove the soaked cloth, and if it is not soiled badly, use this cloth to clean the area by using a rubbing motion for 60 seconds.

5. Following this, wipe area dry with a clean, white, cotton cloth.

CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean spills and stains as quickly as possible.
- For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap and water solution. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner . Dry the area with a soft cloth.
- If the leather cannot be completely cleaned using a mild soap and water solution, the leather may be cleaned using a commercially available leather cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
- To check for compatibility, first test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous part of the leather.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing or damage to the leather.

CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS

Note: Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels and wheel covers.

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

- Clean weekly with Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.
- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover.

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for an extended period of time (30 days or more), read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

All motor vehicles and their components were engineered and tested for reliable, regular driving. Long term storage under various conditions may lead to component degradation or failure unless specific precautions are taken to preserve the components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash vehicles stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up raw or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when the vehicle is washed.
- Lubricate all hood, door and trunk lid hinges, and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Engine

- The engine oil and filter should be changed prior to storage, as used engine oil contain contaminants that may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days. Run at fast idle until it reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Note: During extended periods of vehicle storage (30 days or more), fuel may deteriorate due to oxidation. Add a quality gas stabilizer product to the vehicle fuel system whenever actual or expected storage periods exceed 30 days. Follow the instructions on the additive label. The vehicle should then be operated at idle speed to circulate the additive throughout the fuel system.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm there are no cooling system leaks, and fluid is at the recommended level.

Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, it may be advisable to disconnect the battery cables to ensure battery charge is maintained for quick starting.

Note: If battery cables are disconnected, it will be necessary to reset memory features.

Brakes

- Make sure brakes and parking brake are fully released.

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 feet (8 meters) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

Removing Vehicle from Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage (mice/squirrel nests).
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive the vehicle 15 feet (4.5 meters) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If the battery was removed, clean the battery cable ends and inspect.

Contact your authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

GENERAL INFORMATION**Notice to Utility Vehicle and Truck Owners**

WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must:

- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers;
- Drive at safe speeds for the conditions;
- Keep tires properly inflated;
- Never overload or improperly load your vehicle; and
- Make sure every passenger is properly restrained.



WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear seat belts and children/infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.



Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

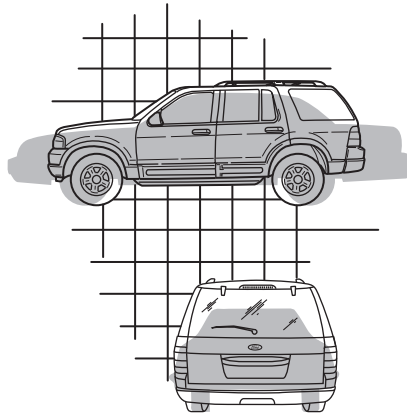
All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System (If Equipped)

WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of AWD vehicles. Although a AWD vehicle may accelerate better than two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

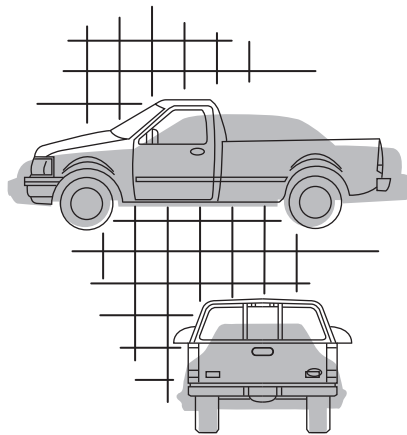
Note: Your AWD vehicle is not intended for off-road use. This feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle under other than those conditions could subject the vehicle to excessive stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.

With the AWD option, power will be delivered to the front wheels and distributed to the rear wheels as needed. This increases traction which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot. The system is active all the time and requires no input from the operator.

For AWD vehicles, a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided should never be used. A dissimilar spare tire size (other than the spare tire provided) or major dissimilar tire sized between the front and rear axles could cause the system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive.

How Your Vehicle Differs from Other Vehicles

wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.



SUVs and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:

- Higher – to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter – to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.
- Narrower – to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.

As a result of the above dimensional differences, SUVs and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition.

These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

TIRE CARE**Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading**

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

- **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104(c)(2).

U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades: The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA A B C

WARNING: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature A B C

WARNING: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

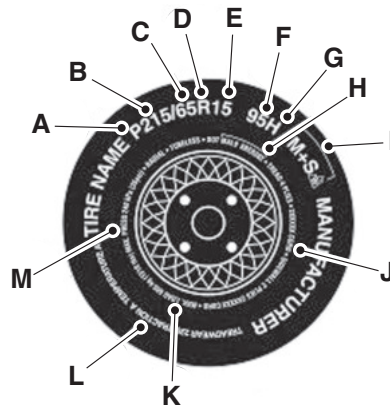
The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Glossary of Tire Terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 kilometers).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Information on P Type Tires

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

Note: If your tire size does not begin with a letter, this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. 15: Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. 95: Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

G. H: Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating - mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN): This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. M+S or M/S: Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used: Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. Maximum Load: Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

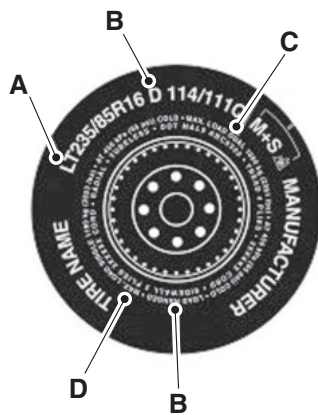
L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades

- **Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

M. Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure: Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings, such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

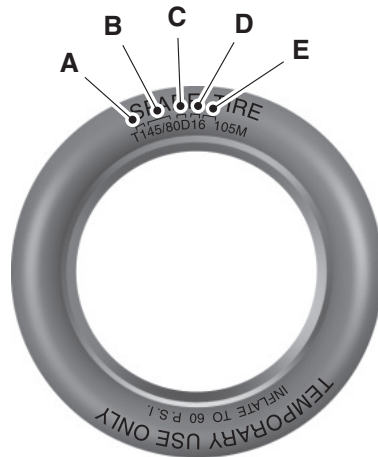
Note: Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range/Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on T Type Tires

T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

Location of the Tire Label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. See the payload description and graphic in the *Load Carrying* chapter.

INFLATING YOUR TIRES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.



WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat build-up and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door

hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 kilometers]), never bleed or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

Note: If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.
3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

Note: If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.
5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

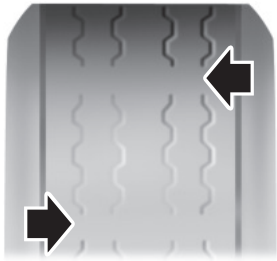
Note: Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type mini-spare tires (see the *Dissimilar Spare Tire and Wheel Assembly Information* section for description): Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires (see the *Dissimilar Spare Tire and Wheel Assembly Information* section for description): Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

Tire Wear

When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 millimeters), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 millimeters).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected, have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

**WARNING: Age**

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure, etc.) the tires experience throughout their lives. In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Tire Replacement Requirements

WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels, then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



WARNING: When mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the TPMS indicator is flashing, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

Safety Practices



WARNING: If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



WARNING: Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits.
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns.
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road.
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking.

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove the wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

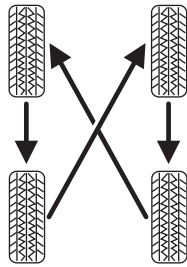
Tire rotation

Note: If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

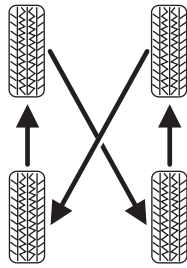
Note: Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly. A dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

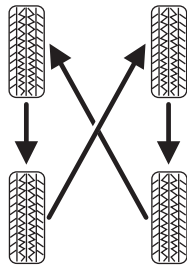
Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the *Scheduled Maintenance* chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Utility:

- Front-wheel drive (FWD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



- All-wheel drive (AWD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)

Sedan:

- Front-wheel drive (FWD)/All-wheel drive (AWD) vehicles (front tires at left of diagram)

Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

POLICE TIRES

Wheel rims - police

To withstand the demands placed on vehicles driven under heavy duty service conditions, Ford Motor Company installs heavy duty steel wheels.

Tires - police

Tires (including the spare) are speed-rated radials for police use. Use only the recommended tire size and speed ratings.

In regions with snow and ice during the winter months, installation of snow tires may be desirable. Snow tires will usually exhibit a drop in dry pavement handling, but many show an increase in snow and ice traction. When snow tires are used, they should be installed on all four wheels, never on the drive wheels only.

Tires - long term storage

Most high performance tires are made with a nylon overlay.

As such, the following steps should be taken to avoid flatspotting when the vehicles are not used for a period of time.

- Fleets should store the vehicles with 44 psi (303 kPa) in the tires.
- If the vehicle is stored for periods longer than 30 days, it should be moved several feet at least once during each 30-day period, so that a different portion of the tread contacts the ground.
- Tire pressure should be reduced to the recommended pressure shown on the vehicle certification label before the vehicle is placed back into service.

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING: Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and cables. If you need to use cables, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as cables may chip aluminum wheels.

Note: The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- For police sedan, do not use snow chains or cables on this vehicle as they may cause damage to your vehicle which may lead to loss of vehicle control.
- For police utility, use only SAE Class S snow chains, snow cables or equivalent on the front axle for 245/55R18 equipped vehicles. The use of snow chains, snow cables or other traction assist devices that are larger than SAE Class S may cause damage to your vehicle's wheel house, suspension and/or body.
- Do not install tire chains, cables, or optional traction devices on the rear tires. This could cause damage to the vehicle's wheel house or body.
- Install cable chains securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) with tire cables on your vehicle.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against your vehicle, stop and retighten the cables. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent damage to your vehicle.
- Remove the tire cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire cables on dry roads.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge. See *Inflating Your Tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

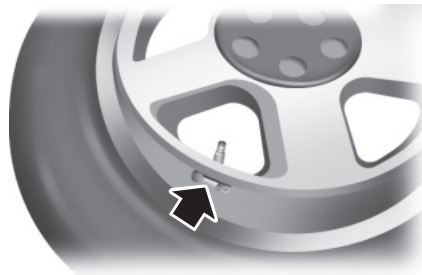
Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction

telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

The tire pressure monitoring system complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changing Tires with a TPMS



Note: Each road tire and full-size spare is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the tire/wheel cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Care must be taken when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.

It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See *Inflating Your Tires* in this chapter.

Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

When a new wheel and tire is installed

When one of your road tires is replaced by a new tire and wheel, the TPMS sensor located in the new tire and wheel needs to be trained to the vehicle.

TPMS training tools

The customer training tool, P/N 8C2Z-1A203-A, can be purchased from any Ford dealer for training the system after maintenance has been performed that requires system training. The tire pressure monitor activation tool, P/N 204-363, is also available through the Rotunda catalog. For either tool, follow the training instructions as outlined below.

TPMS sensor training procedure

Note: To reduce the chances of interference from another vehicle, TPMS training should be performed at least three feet (one meter) away from another Ford Motor Company vehicle undergoing the TPMS training procedure at the same time.

Note: Do not wait more than two minutes between resetting each tire sensor or the system will time-out and the entire procedure will have to be repeated on all four wheels.

A double horn chirp indicates the need to repeat the procedure.

TPMS training procedure

Note: It is recommended that you read the entire procedure before attempting.

Note: To enter the training mode, Steps 1–6 MUST be completed within 60 seconds.

1. Place the ignition in the off position and keep the key in the ignition.
2. Press and release the brake pedal.
3. Cycle the ignition from off to on three times ending in the on position - DO NOT start the engine.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal for two seconds, then release.
5. Turn the ignition to off - DO NOT remove the key.
6. Cycle the ignition from off to on three times ending in on - DO NOT start the engine.

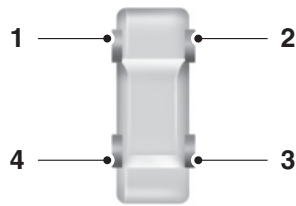
If the training mode has been entered successfully, the horn will sound once, the TPMS indicator will flash, and the information display will show TRAIN LF TIRE.

If after repeated attempts to enter the training mode, the horn does not sound, the TPMS indicator does not flash, and the information display does not show TRAIN LF TIRE, seek service from your authorized dealer.

Training procedure

Note: It may take up to six seconds to activate a tire pressure sensor. During this time, the tool must remain in place at the valve stem.

1. Place the tool on the LF tire sidewall at the valve stem. Press and release the test button on the tool. The horn will sound briefly to indicate that the tire pressure sensor has been recognized by the on-board module.
2. Within two minutes of the horn sounding, place the tool on the RF tire sidewall of the valve stem and press and release the test button to train the RF tire pressure sensor.



Note: Do not wait more than two minutes between training each sensor or the module will time out and the entire procedure must be repeated.

3. Repeat Step 2 for the RR and LR tires. The procedure is completed after the last tire has been trained. When the training procedure is complete, the information display (if equipped) will show TIRE TRAINING COMPLETE. For vehicles not equipped with an information display, successful completion of the training procedure will be verified by turning the ignition switch to the off position without the horn sounding. If the horn sounds twice when the switch is turned to the off position, the training procedure was not successful.

When you believe your system is not operating properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Please refer to the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See <i>Inflating your tires</i> in this chapter. 2. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Wheel and tire swap without training	Train the sensors to the vehicle. Refer to the TPMS <i>Training procedure</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and installed and trained, and the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Wheel and tire swap without training	Train the sensors to the vehicle. Refer to the TPMS <i>Training procedure</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated, but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

When inflating your tires

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

How temperature affects your tire pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase approximately 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease approximately 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the TPMS as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the TPMS warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. (If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.) Check air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

WARNING: The use of tire sealants may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should not be used. However, if you must use a sealant, the TPMS sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized Ford dealer.



WARNING: See *Tire Pressure Monitoring System* in this chapter for important information. If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

Note: The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use until the spare's TPMS sensor is trained.

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensors, see *Tire Pressure Monitoring System* earlier in the chapter. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the TPMS sensor for damage.

Tire Change Procedure

WARNING: When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission selector lever is in position **P**.



WARNING: To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure to place the transmission selector lever in position **P**, set the parking brake and block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.



WARNING: Never get underneath a vehicle that is supported only by a jack. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.



WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



WARNING: Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided as original equipment with your vehicle, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications.

Note: Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

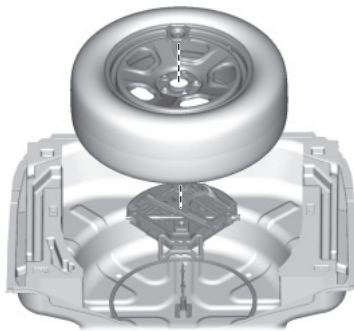
Note: For sedan, only the original equipment tire or 245/55R18 tire with outer diameter less than 725 mm will stow in the tire tub.

Utility:

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission selector lever in position **P** and turn the engine off.

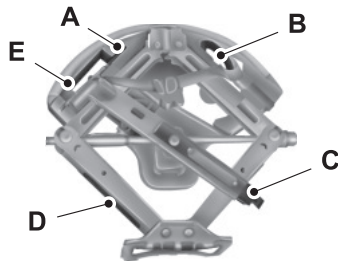


3. Turn the two knobs on the floor filler counterclockwise, then remove the floor filler and carpeted floor panel located in the rear of the vehicle.



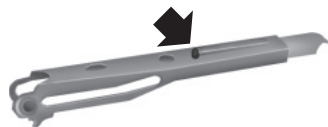
4. Remove the wing nut securing the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.

5. Lift and remove the spare tire from the spare tire well.



6. Remove the wing bolt that secures the jack kit by turning it counterclockwise.

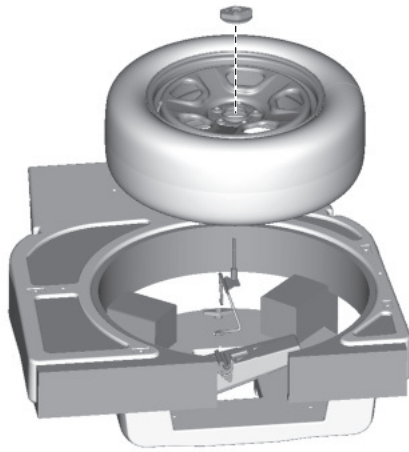
7. Remove the jack kit which includes jack (D), wheel wrench (lug wrench) (C), wheel chock (E), L-shaped bolt (A) and tow recovery hook (B).



8. Turn the lead screw (where the lug wrench attaches) of the jack by hand to release the wheel wrench from the jack. Press the button on the wrench to extend the handle. Fold down the wrench socket.

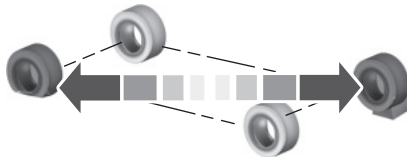
Sedan:

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission selector lever in position **P** and turn the engine off.



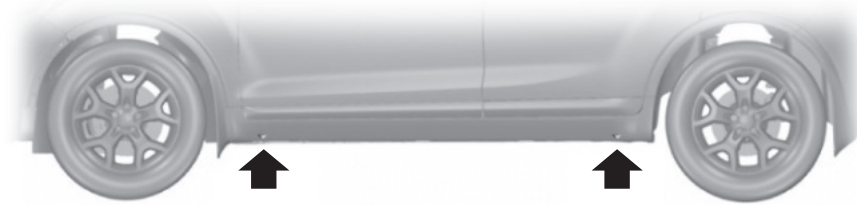
3. Lift the trunk cargo cover, and remove the wing nut that secures the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Lift and remove the spare tire from the trunk.
5. Remove the second wing nut that secures the jack retention bracket by turning it counterclockwise, remove the jack kit from the vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and the wrench from the felt bag. Fold down the wrench socket to use to loosen the lug nuts and to operate the jack.

Vehicle jacking



1. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.
2. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.
3. The vehicle jacking points are shown here, and are depicted on the yellow warning label on the jack.

Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.



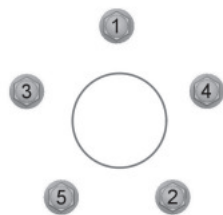
4. Small arrow-shaped marks on the sills show the location of the jacking points.



5. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

6. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

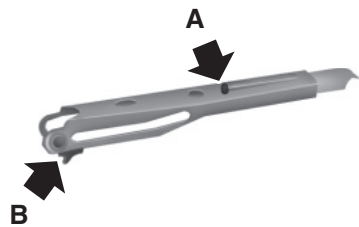
7. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



8. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See *Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications* in this chapter for the proper lug nut torque specification.

Stowing the spare and jack (utility)

1. Replace the wheel chock in the foam tray.



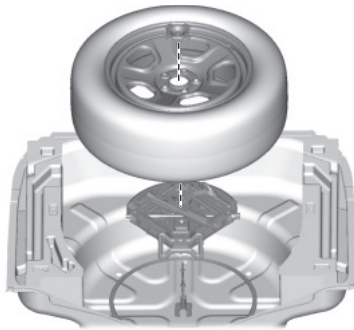
2. Adjust the jack to the proper height to install the wrench. Turn the jack lead screw until the arrow on the upper link is slightly below the circle indicator shown on the lower link.

Push the button (A) to retract the wrench handle and place the wrench over the raised tab on the lower link and drop the tang (B) through the hole in the diagonally opposite upper link. Turn lead screw of jack clockwise until the arrow aligns with the circle indicator to secure the wrench onto the jack.

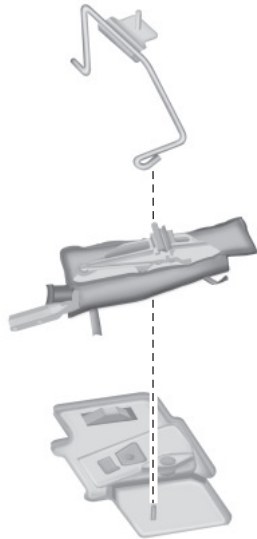
3. Place the jack in the foam tray and secure it with the attached strap.
4. Place the foam tray over the mounting bracket on the floor of the spare tire well.
5. Replace the spare over the jack and secure with wing nut.

Stowing the flat tire**Utility:**

1. Place the flat tire into the spare tire well.
2. Secure the flat tire with the wing nut.



Sedan:



1. Insert the straight end of the jack retention bracket through the eyelet of the angled bracket and swing the retention bracket over the jack. With the jack in place, place the end of the retention bracket over the threaded stud in the trunk floor and secure it with the plastic wing nut.
2. Screw the extension bolt onto the threaded stud of the jack retention bracket.



3. Place the flat tire in the spare tire well with the wheel facing up.
4. Safely secure the wheel by screwing the large wing nut onto the extension bolt.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS**Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications**

! **WARNING:** When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Ensure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance (rotation, flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

Lug nut socket size/bolt size	Wheel lug nut torque*	
	ft-lb	N•m
1/2 x 20	110	149

* Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.



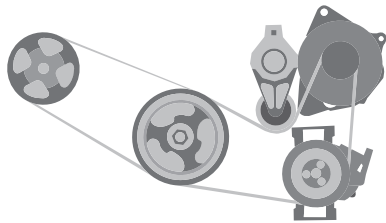
Note: Inspect the wheel pilot hole and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Engine	3.5L V6 engine	3.5L V6 EcoBoost engine	3.7L V6 engine
Cubic inches	214	214	227
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane or Ethanol (E-85)	Minimum 87 octane	Minimum 87 octane or Ethanol (E-85)
Firing order	1-4-2-5-3-6	1-4-2-5-3-6	1-4-2-5-3-6
Ignition system	Coil on plug	Coil on plug	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	0.049-0.053 in. (1.25-1.35 mm)	0.033-0.037 in. (.84-.94 mm)	0.049-0.053 in. (1.25-1.35 mm)
Compression ratio	10.8:1	10.0:1	10.5:1

Engine drivebelt routing

3.5L/3.7L V6 engines



1. Short drivebelt is on first pulley groove closest to engine (except vehicles with electric power assisted steering).

2. Long drivebelt is on second pulley groove farthest from engine.

3.5L V6 EcoBoost engine



TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Items	Capacity	Ford Part Name or equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
Brake fluid ¹	Between MIN and MAX on reservoir	Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	PM-20 / WSS-M6C65-A2 and ISO 4925 Class 6
Door latch, hood latch, auxiliary hood latch, seat tracks, trunk and liftgate latches	—	Multi-Purpose Grease (Lithium grease)	XG-4 or XL-5 or equivalent / ESA-M1C93-B
Lock cylinders	—	Motorcraft® Penetrating and Lock Lubricant	XL-1 / None
Automatic transmission fluid ^{2,3}	10.9 quarts (10.3L) (6F50)	Motorcraft® MERCON® LV ATF	XT-10-QLV / MERCON® LV
	11.6 quarts (11.0L) (6F55)		
Rear differential fluid	2.4 pints (1.15L)	Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-80W90-QL / WSP-M2C197-A
Sedan Power Transfer Unit fluid (AWD) ⁴	18 ounces (0.53L)	Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	X Y-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A
	12 ounces (0.35L)		
Utility Power Transfer Unit fluid (4WD) ⁴	12 ounces (0.35L)		

Items	Capacity	Ford Part Name or equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
<p>Engine oil^{5,6}</p>	<p>3.5L V6 engine 6.0 quarts (5.7L) 3.7L V6 engine 6.0 quarts (5.7L)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US) • Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil (US) • Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada) • Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil (Canada) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • XO-5W20-QSP (US) • XO-5W-20-QFS (US) • CXO-5W20- LSP12 (Canada) • CXO-5W20-LFS12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C945-A and API Certification Mark
	<p>3.5L V6 EcoBoost engine 6.0 quarts (5.7L)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US) • Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Full Synthetic Motor Oil (US) • Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada) • Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Synthetic Motor Oil (Canada) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • XO-5W30-QSP (US) • XO-5W30-QFS (US) • CXO-5W30-LSP12 (Canada) • CXO-5W30-LFS12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C946-A with API Certification Mark

Items	Capacity	Ford Part Name or equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
Engine coolant ⁷	(3.5L V6/3.7L V6 engines) 11.5 quarts (10.9L)	Motorcraft® Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • VC-3DIL-B (US) • CVC-3DIL-B (Canada) / WSS-M97B44-D2
	(3.5L V6 EcoBoost engine) 11.8 quarts (11.2L)		
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required	Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (US) Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada)	ZC-32-A (US) CXC-37-(A, B, D, and F) (Canada) / WSB-M8B16-A2/- -
Fuel tank	Sedan 19.0 gallons (72L) Utility 18.6 gallons (70L)	—	—
¹ Use only Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 and ISO 4925 Class 6. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause brake system damage.			
² Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.			
³ Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® LV should only use MERCON® LV fluid. Refer to <i>scheduled maintenance information</i> to determine the correct service interval. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.			

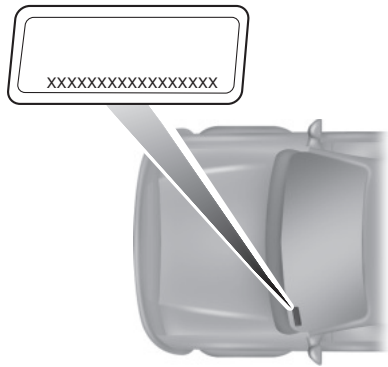
Items	Capacity	Ford Part Name or equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
⁴ See your authorized dealer for fluid level checking or filling.			
⁵ Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Engine oil need only meet the requirements of Ford specification WSS-M2C946-A (3.5L V6 EcoBoost engine) or WSS-M2C945-A (3.5L/3.7L V6 engines) and display the API Certification Mark.			
⁶ Your engine has been designed to be used with Ford engine oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of your engine. Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.			
⁷ Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.			

Motorcraft part numbers

Component	3.5L V6 engine	3.5L V6 EcoBoost engine	3.7L V6 engine
Air filter element	FA-1884	FA-1884	FA-1884
Battery	BXT-59	BXT-65-650	BXT-59
Oil filter	FL-500-S	FL-500-S	FL-500-S
Spark plugs	SP-520 ¹	SP-528 ¹	SP-520 ¹
Cabin air filter	FP68	FP68	FP68
Windshield wiper blade	Sedan WW-2601-PF (driver side) WW-2001-PF (passenger side) Utility WW-2206-PF (driver side) WW-2600-PF (passenger side)		
¹ Refer to <i>scheduled maintenance information</i> for the appropriate intervals for changing the spark plugs.			

Note: Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft® or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.

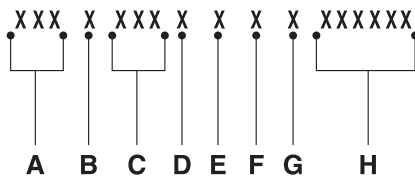
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



The vehicle identification number is located on the driver side instrument panel.

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

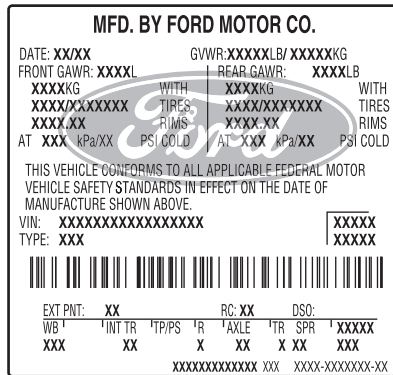
The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) contains the following information:



- A. World manufacturer identifier
- B. Brake system / Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) / Restraint Devices and their location
- C. Make, vehicle line, series, body type
- D. Engine type
- E. Check digit
- F. Model year

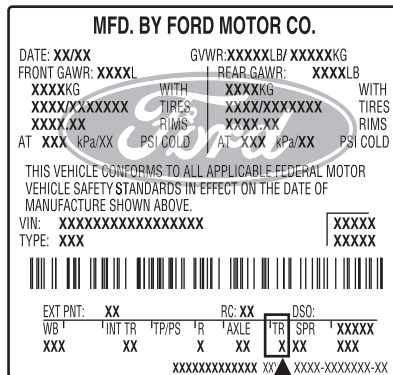
- G. Assembly plant
- H. Production sequence number

VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.

TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION



You can find a transmission code on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table tells you which transmission each code represents.

Description	Code
6-speed automatic transmission (6F50)	J
6-speed automatic transmission (6F55)	C

FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS (U.S. ONLY)

More than 32 million Ford and Lincoln owners have discovered the powerful protection of Ford ESP. It is the only extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides “peace of mind” protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

Up to 500+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four, new-vehicle Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your dealer for details.

PremiumCare – Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 500 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what’s not covered!

ExtraCare – Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.

BaseCare – Covers 84 components.

PowertrainCare – Covers 29 critical components.

Ford ESP is honored by all Ford and Lincoln Dealers in the U.S. and Canada It’s the only extended service plan authorized and backed by Ford Motor Company. That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service anywhere you go.
- **Factory-trained technicians.**
- **Ford Authorized Parts used with every covered repair.**

Rental car reimbursement

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including Bumper-to-Bumper warranty repairs, or manufacturer’s recalls.

Transferable coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford ESP coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you’re ready to sell your car, prospective buyers may feel better about taking a risk on your used vehicle. Ford ESP may add resale value!

Plus, **exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance**, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out-of-fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.

Ford ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Ford ESP Service Contract. With Ford ESP, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

Avoid the rising cost of properly maintaining your vehicle!

Ford ESP also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers items that **routinely wear out**.

The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of items that require periodic attention for **normal “wear”**:

- **Wiper blades**
- **Spark plugs (except California)**
- **Clutch disc**
- **Brake pads and linings**
- **Shock absorbers**
- **Belts and hoses**

Contact your selling Ford or Lincoln dealership today so they can customize a Ford Extended Service Plan that fits your driving lifestyle and budget.

Interest free finance options available

Take advantage of our installment payment plan, just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable no interest, no-fee payment opportunity.

Protect Yourself From the Rising Cost of Vehicle Repairs With a Ford Extended Service Plan

To learn more, call our Ford ESP specialists at 800-367-3377, and don't forget to ask about our interest free payment program, allowing you all the security and benefits Ford ESP has to offer while paying over time. You're pre-approved with no credit checks, no hassles!

Or, mail your name, address, city, state and zip code to:

Ford ESP
P.O. Box 8072
Royal Oak, MI 48068-9933

FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP). Ford ESP is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford ESP provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires
- Roadside Assistance benefits

There are several Ford ESP plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental.

When you purchase Ford ESP, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada and the United States, provided by a network of participating Ford Motor Company dealers. The Lincoln Maintenance Protection Plan is honored at authorized Lincoln dealers.

Note: Repairs performed outside of Canada and the United States are not eligible for Ford ESP coverage.

This information is subject to change.

For more information, visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or www.ford.ca to find the Ford Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION**Why Maintain Your Vehicle?**

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may also help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with the vehicle.

Regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle have been established based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep your cost of owning the vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to see that all scheduled maintenance is performed and that the materials used meet the specifications identified in the *Capacities and Specifications* chapter. Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?***Factory-Trained Technicians***

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft® and Ford-authorized branded remanufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide, 12 month/12000 mile (20000 kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty. If you do not use Ford authorized parts, they may not meet Ford specifications and, depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

Note: Not all dealers have extended hours or bodyshops. Please contact your dealer for details.

Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that will pay dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, it is imperative that scheduled maintenance be completed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is equipped with the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor® (IOLM) system which displays a message in the information display at the proper oil change service interval; this interval may be up to one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers). When ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE or OIL CHANGE REQUIRED appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change; the oil change must be done within two weeks or 500 miles (800 kilometers) of the ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE or OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing. The Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor® must be reset after each oil change; see the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

If your information display is prematurely reset or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5000 miles (8000 kilometers) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between oil change intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex, performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

Ford strongly recommends the use of only genuine Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized remanufactured replacement parts because they are engineered for your vehicle.

Additives and Chemicals

Ford Motor Company recommended additives and chemicals are listed in the owner manual and in the Ford Workshop Manual. Additional chemicals or additives not approved by Ford Motor Company are not recommended as part of normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating and foreign material contamination should be inspected immediately by a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership. Your vehicle's oils and fluids should be changed at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system, or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

Owner Checks and Services

Certain basic maintenance checks and inspections should be performed every month or at six month intervals.

Check Every Month
Engine oil level.
Function of all interior and exterior lights.
Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure.
Windshield washer fluid level.
Check Every Six Months
Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
Parking brake for proper operation.
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag, safety belt) for operation.
Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

Multi-point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. Ford Motor Company recommends the following multi-point inspection be performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

Multi-point Inspection	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Half-shaft dust boots (if equipped)
Battery performance	Horn operation
Clutch operation (if equipped)	Radiator, cooler, heater and A/C hoses
Engine air filter	Suspension component for leaks or damage
Exhaust system	Steering and linkage
Exterior lamps and hazard warning system operation	Tires for wear and proper pressure, including spare
Fluid levels [*] ; fill if necessary	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
For oil and fluid leaks	Washer spray and wiper operation

^{*}Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, manual and automatic transmission (with an underhood dipstick), power steering (if equipped) and window washer

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It's a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. It's your checklist that gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle. You'll know what's been checked, what's okay, as well as those things that may require future or immediate attention. The multi-point vehicle inspection is one more way to keep your vehicle running great!

GENUINE
PARTS & SERVICE

Personal Member of:
 Personal Service Business

Multi-Point Inspection Report Card as Recommended by Ford Motor Company

Name: _____

Today's Date: _____

State Inspection Month: _____

Home Address: _____

Make/Model/Year: _____

mileage: _____

Sync Vehicle Health Report Year: _____

VMA Addressed: Yes No File Review

Checked and OK: (This box is checked if all items are OK.)

Contributes to vehicle with a recall: (This box is checked if the vehicle has a recall.)

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE	THINGS TO DO FOR SERVICES ON THIS MAINT	CHECKED	REMARKS
<input type="checkbox"/> Engine Air Filter	<input type="checkbox"/> Oil Filter	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Engine Air Filter	<input type="checkbox"/> Spark Plugs	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Engine Coolant	<input type="checkbox"/> Tire Rotation	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Fuel Filter	<input type="checkbox"/> Transmission Filter	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Oil Change	<input type="checkbox"/> Transmission Fluid	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

*This is only a partial list of vehicle maintenance items and is NOT all-inclusive. Please consult your Owner Manual or visit www.fordmotor.com for vehicle specific maintenance requirements.

CHECK FLUID LEVELS AND FILL	CHECKED
<input type="checkbox"/> Oil and/or fluid leaks	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Coolant	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Brake Fluid	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Power Steering	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Windshield Washer	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Windshield Washer	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Windshield Washer	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Windshield Washer	<input type="checkbox"/>

BATTERY	CHECKED
State of Health: <input type="checkbox"/> Excellent <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Condition of Cell: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Factory spec cold cranking amps: _____	<input type="checkbox"/>
Arctic Cold Cranking Amps (ACCA): _____	<input type="checkbox"/>

EXTERIOR BODY	CHECKED
Bodywork: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Washers: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Washers: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Washers: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Washers: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>

LIGHTS/UNDERBONNET/UNDERHOOD	CHECKED
Headlights: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Headlights: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Headlights: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Headlights: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Headlights: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>

BRAKE LINES	CHECKED
Brake Lines: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Brake Lines: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Brake Lines: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Brake Lines: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Brake Lines: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>

TIRE TREAD	CHECKED
Tire Tread: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tire Tread: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tire Tread: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tire Tread: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tire Tread: <input type="checkbox"/> Good <input type="checkbox"/> Fair <input type="checkbox"/> Poor <input type="checkbox"/> Bad	<input type="checkbox"/>

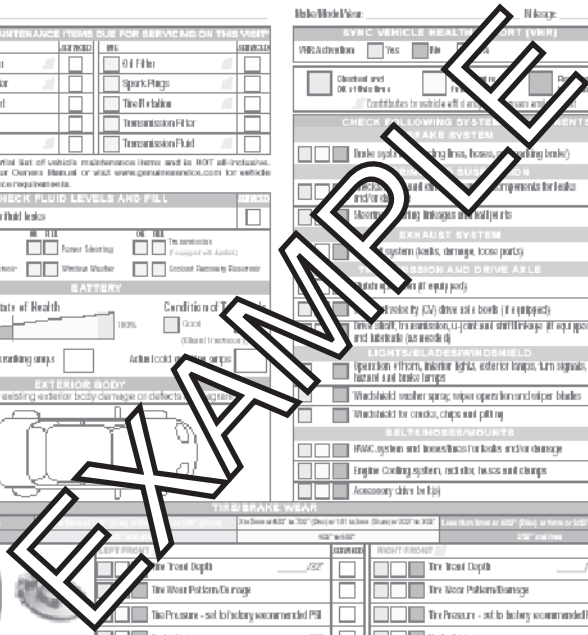
Comments: _____

Service Advisor: _____ Customer Signature: _____

Technician: _____

12-XXXXXXXX

© 2012 Ford Motor Company. Ford Motor Company, an Equal Opportunity Employer.



NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE AND LOG**Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor®**

Your vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor® that determines when the engine oil needs to be changed based on how your vehicle is used. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduce environmental waste at the same time. This means you won't have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule; the vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE or OIL CHANGE REQUIRED in the information display. The following table is intended to provide examples of vehicle use and its impact on engine oil change intervals; it is provided as a guideline only. Actual engine oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.

When to expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message	
Miles (km)	Vehicle use and examples
7500-10000 (12000-16000)	Normal
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Normal commuting with highway driving - No, or moderate, load or towing - Flat to moderately hilly roads - No extended idling
5000-7499 (8000-11999)	Severe
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Moderate to heavy load or towing - Mountainous or off-road conditions - Extended idling - Extended hot or cold operation
3000-4999 (4000-7999)	Extreme
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Maximum load or towing - Extreme hot or cold operation

Normal Scheduled Maintenance*	
At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display	Change engine oil and filter.**
	Rotate tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth.
	Perform multi-point inspection (recommended).
	Inspect automatic transmission fluid level (if equipped with dipstick). Consult dealer for requirements.
	Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake.
	Inspect cabin air filter (if equipped).
	Inspect engine cooling system strength and hoses.
	Inspect exhaust system and heat shields.
	Inspect rear axle and U-joints. Lubricate if equipped with grease fittings (AWD vehicles).
	Inspect half-shaft boots (if equipped).
	Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints. Lubricate if equipped with grease fittings.
	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

*Do not exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between service intervals.

**Reset your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each engine oil and filter change. See the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

Additional Maintenance Items¹	
Every 20000 miles (32000 km)	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped).
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Replace climate-controlled (heated and cooled) seat filter (if equipped).
	Replace engine air filter.
At 100000 miles (160000 km)	Change engine coolant. ²
Every 100000 miles (160000 km)	Replace spark plugs.
	Inspect accessory drive belt(s). ³
Every 150000 miles (240000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid and filter.
	Change manual transmission fluid.
	Replace accessory drive belt(s) if not replaced within the last 100000 miles (160000 km).

¹Additional maintenance items can be performed within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the last oil change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

²Initial replacement at six years or 100000 miles (160000 kilometers), then every three years or 50000 miles (80000 kilometers).

³After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.

Maintenance Schedule Log

<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>

Scheduled Maintenance

307

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>

Scheduled Maintenance

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>

SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform additional maintenance as indicated. If you **occasionally** operate your vehicle under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the additional maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

Perform the services shown in the following tables when specified or within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing in the information display.

Example #1: The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message comes on at 28751 miles (46270 kilometers); perform the 30000 mile (48000 kilometer) automatic transmission fluid replacement.

Example #2: The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message has **not** come on, but the odometer reads 30000 miles (48000 kilometers); perform the engine air filter replacement. (i.e., Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor® was reset at 25000 miles [40000 kilometers].)

Towing a Trailer or Using a Camper or Car-top Carrier	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect and lubricate U-joints.
	See axle maintenance items under <i>Exceptions</i> .
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except Focus).
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Change manual transmission fluid.

Extensive Idling or Low-speed Driving for Long Distances as in Heavy Commercial Use (i.e., Delivery, Taxi, Patrol Car or Livery)	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped).
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except Focus).
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.
Operating in Dusty or Sandy Conditions Such as Unpaved or Dusty Roads	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped).
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter.*
	Perform multi-point inspection.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except Focus).
Every 50000 miles (80000 km)	Change manual transmission fluid.
Exclusive Use of E85 (Flex Fuel Vehicles only)	
Every oil change	If ran exclusively on E85, fill the fuel tank full with regular unleaded fuel.

*Reset your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor® after each engine oil and filter change. See the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

Police Interceptor Equipped with an Engine Idle Hour Meter	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped).
Every 5000 miles (8000 km)	Inspect the brake system.
	Lubricate control arm and steering ball joints if equipped with grease fittings.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months or as indicated by time/mileage calculation (see description below)	Change engine oil and filter.*
	Perform multi-point inspection.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

*Reset your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor® after each engine oil and filter change. See the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

ENGINE IDLE HOUR METER (IF EQUIPPED):

Your vehicle may be equipped with an idle meter to indicate how much time the vehicle is idling in position **P** or **N**. The meter is incorporated with the vehicle odometer. Depressing the odometer-reset button once displays the trip odometer (miles [kilometers] followed by a “T” for trip odometer); depressing the odometer-reset button a second time displays the idle meter (hours followed by an “H” for hours). The idle meter only accumulates time when the vehicle is in position **P** or **N**. Displayed time is cumulative for the vehicle. **It cannot be reset to zero.** Police/Fleet vehicles often experience long periods of idling, during which engine oil continues to break down but distance is not accumulated on the odometer.

To assist fleet managers in maintaining proper oil change intervals, the idle meter helps determine when an oil change is required. For every hour that the vehicle idles, it has accumulated the equivalent of approximately 33 miles (53 kilometers) of driving. Using the combination of the vehicle odometer and idle meter allows the fleet manager to better determine when the oil needs to be changed

Engine idle hour meter calculation:

Idle hours x 33 = miles (kilometers) equivalency

Miles (kilometers) driven + miles (kilometers) equivalency = oil change interval

Example: When the odometer has accumulated 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) and the idle meter shows 61 hours, a 5000 mile (8000 kilometer) oil change interval has been reached: 3000 road miles (4800 road kilometers) + (61 idle hours x 33 miles [53 km]/idle hour) = 5013 miles (8067 kilometers).

Special Operating Condition Log

<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>

Scheduled Maintenance

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>

EXCEPTIONS

There are some exceptions to the Normal Schedule. They are listed below:

California fuel filter replacement: If the vehicle is registered in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

Hot climate oil change intervals: Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 5000 miles (8000 kilometers).
If the available API SM or SN oils are not available, then the oil change service interval is 3000 miles (4800 kilometers).

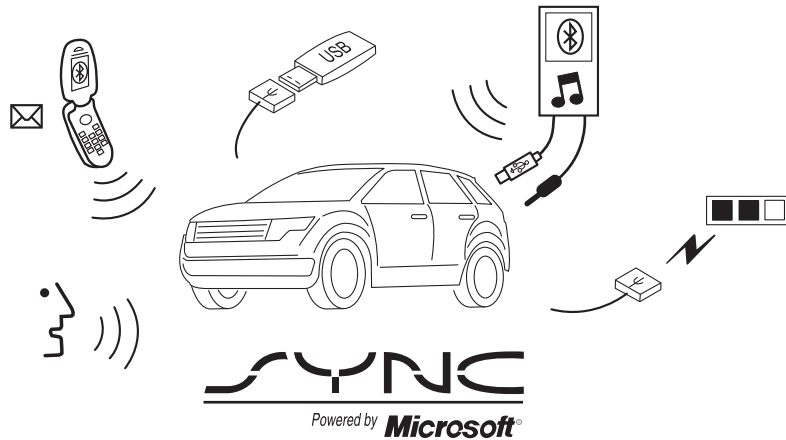
Engine air filter & cabin air filter replacement: Engine air filter and cabin air filter life is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions will require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

ENGINE COOLANT CHANGE RECORD

Initial change	Six years or 100000 miles (160000 km) (whichever comes first)
After initial change	Every three years or 50000 miles (80000 km)

Engine Coolant Change Log

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>



SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone and portable media player. This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls.
- Access and play music from your portable music player.
- Use 911 Assist®, Vehicle Health Report and SYNC Services (Traffic, Directions & Information) (if equipped).
- Use applications, such as Pandora and Stitcher, via SYNC AppLink™ (if applicable).
- Access phonebook contacts and music via voice commands.
- Stream music from your connected phone.
- Text message.
- Use the advanced voice recognition system.
- USB device charging (if your device supports this).

GENERAL INFORMATION

Ensure that you review your device's user guide before using it with SYNC.

Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you cannot answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-8:00pm EST

In the United States, call: 1-888-270-1055

In Canada, call: 1-800-565-3673

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

Driving Restrictions

For your safety, certain features are speed-dependent and restricted when your vehicle is traveling over 3 mph (5 km/h).

Safety Information

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC, do not:

- Operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where they cannot be stepped on or interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Leave playing devices in the vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- Attempt to service or repair the system. See your authorized dealer.

Privacy Information

When a cellular phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that is linked to that cellular phone. This profile is created in order to offer you more cellular features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log remain in the vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in the vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or the vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to the vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the sections on 911 Assist® (if equipped), Vehicle Health Report (if equipped), and Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped).

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you.

Initiating a Voice Session



Push the voice icon; a tone sounds and Listening appears in the display. Say any of the following:

Say:	If you want to:
“Phone”	Make calls.
“USB”	Access the device connected to your USB port.
“Bluetooth Audio”	Stream audio from your phone.
“Line in”	Access the device connected to the auxiliary input jack.
“Cancel”	Cancel the requested action.
“SYNC”	Return to the main menu.
“Voice settings”	Adjust the level of voice interaction and feedback.
“Vehicle Health Report”	Run a vehicle health report.*
“Services”	Access the SYNC Services portal.*
“Mobile apps”	Access mobile applications.*
“Help”	Hear a list of voice commands available in the current mode.

*If equipped, U.S. only.

System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings). You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

Adjusting the Interaction Level



Push the voice icon; when prompted, say “Voice settings”, then any of the following:

When you say:	The system:
“Interaction mode standard”	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance.
“Interaction mode advanced”	Provides less audible interaction and more tone prompts.

The system defaults to the standard interaction mode.

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request. (For example, the system may ask “Phone, is that correct?”) If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested and you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.

“Confirmation prompts on”
“Confirmation prompts off”

The system creates candidate lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command. When turned on, you may be prompted with as many as four possibilities for clarification.

For example, “Say 1 after the tone to call John Doe at home. Say 2 after the tone to call Johnny Doe on mobile. Say 3 after the tone to call Jane Doe at home.” Or, “Say 1 after the tone to play John Doe, Say 2 after the tone to play Johnny Doe.”

“Phone candidate lists on”
“Phone candidate lists off”
“Media candidate lists on”
“Media candidate lists off”

Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of the vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken prior to this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice icon.

USING SYNC WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cellular phone's functionality. At a minimum, most cellular phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's user manual and visit www.SYNCMYRide.com, www.SYNCMYRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

Pairing a Phone for the First Time

Note: SYNC can support downloading up to approximately 2000 entries per Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.

Note: Make sure the vehicle ignition and radio are turned on and the transmission is in position **P**.

Note: To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.

Wirelessly pairing your phone with SYNC allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

1. Press the phone button; when the display indicates no phone is paired, press OK.
2. When Add Bluetooth Device appears, press OK.
3. When Find SYNC appears in the display, press OK.
4. Put your phone into Bluetooth discovery mode. See your phone's user guide if necessary.
5. When prompted on your phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC in the radio display.
6. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.
7. Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up), downloading your phone book, etc.

Pairing Subsequent Phones

Note: To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.

Note: Make sure the vehicle ignition and radio are turned on and that the transmission is in position **P**.

1. Press the phone button and scroll until System Settings is selected.
2. Press OK and scroll until Bluetooth Devices is selected and press OK.
3. Scroll until Add Bluetooth Device is selected and press OK.
4. When Find SYNC appears in the display, press OK.
5. Put your phone into Bluetooth discovery mode. See your phone's user guide if necessary.
6. When prompted on your phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC in the radio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.
7. The system then prompts with questions such as if you would like to set the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up), download your phone book, etc.

Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice icon and say "Phone". Say any of the following:

"PHONE"
"Call <name>" ¹
"Call <name> on mobile OR cell" ¹
"Call <name> on other" ¹
"Phone book <name> at home" ²
"Phone book <name> on mobile OR cell" ²
"Call history outgoing" ²
"Phone book <name> on Other" ²
"Call history missed" ²
"Menu" ^{2,3}
"Join"
"Call <name> at home" ¹
"Call <name> at work" OR "Call <name> in office" ¹
"Dial" ^{1,4}
"Phone book <name>" ²

“PHONE”
“Phone book <name> at work” OR “Phone book <name> at office” ²
“Call history incoming” ²
“Connections” ²
“Go to privacy”
“Hold”

¹These commands do not require you to say “Phone” first.

²These commands are not available until phone information is completely downloaded using Bluetooth.

³See “MENU” table below.

⁴See “DIAL” table below.

“MENU”
“(Phone) connections” [*]
“(Phone) settings (message) notification off” [*]
“(Phone) settings (message) notification on” [*]
“(Phone) settings (set) phone ringer” [*]
“(Phone) settings (set) ringer 1” [*]
“(Phone) settings (set) ringer 2” [*]
“(Phone) settings (set) ringer 3” [*]
“(Phone) settings (set) ringer off” [*]
“Battery”
“Phone name”
“Signal”
“Text message inbox”

^{*}Words in () are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command.

Phone book commands: When you ask SYNC® to access a phone book name, number, etc., the requested information appears in the display to view. Press the phone button and say “Call” to call the contact.

“DIAL”
“411” (four-one-one), “911” (nine-one-one), etc.
“700 (seven hundred)” (seven hundred)
“800 (eight hundred)” (eight hundred)

“DIAL”
“900 (nine hundred)” (nine hundred)
“#” “/” (pound, slash)
“<number> 0–9”
“Asterisk” (*)
“Clear” (deletes all entered digits)
“Delete” (deletes one digit)
“Plus”
“Star”

Note: To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or press MENU to go to the PHONE menu.

Making Calls

Press the voice icon and when prompted say:

1. Say “Call <name>” or “Dial”, then the desired number.
2. When the system confirms the number, say “Dial” again to initiate the call.

To erase the last spoken digit, say “Delete” or press the left arrow button. To erase all spoken digits, say “Clear” or press and hold the left arrow button.

To end the call, press and hold the phone button.

Receiving Calls

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the phone button.
- Reject the call by pressing and holding the phone button.
- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

Phone Options during an Active Call

During an active call, you have additional menu features which become available such as putting a call on hold, joining calls, etc. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options.

To access:

1. Press MENU during an active call.
2. When Active Call Menu is selected, press OK.

3. Scroll to cycle through the following options:

When you select:	You can:
Mute Call?	Mute the call.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cellular phone for a more private conversation. Press OK when Privacy on/off appears. (The display indicates In Privacy and the system transfers your call.)
Call Hold	Put an active call on hold. Press OK when Place Call on Hold? appears. To answer another call at this time, press the phone button.
Join Calls	Join two separate calls. 1. Press the phone button. 2. Access the desired contact through SYNC or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, press MENU. 3. Scroll until Join Calls appears and press OK. Press OK again when Join Calls? appears. Note: SYNC supports a maximum of three callers on a multiparty/conference call.
Enter Tones	Enter “tones” such as numbers for passwords. Scroll until the desired number appears in the display, then press OK; a tone sounds as confirmation. Repeat as necessary.
Phonebook	Access your phonebook contacts. 1. Press OK to select, then scroll through your phonebook contacts. 2. Press OK again when the desired selection appears in the display. 3. Press the phone button.

When you select:	You can:
Call History	Access your call history log. 1. Press OK to select, then scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed). 2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display. 3. Press the phone button to call the selection.
Return	Exit the current menu.

Accessing Features through the Phone Menu

SYNC's phone menu allows you to redial a number, access your call history and phone book and send text messages as well as access phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features, such as 911 Assist®, Vehicle Health Report and SYNC Services.

1. Press the phone button to enter the Phone Menu.
2. Scroll to cycle through:

When you select:	You can:
Phone Redial	Redial the last number called (if available). Press OK to select, then press OK again to confirm.
Call History¹	Allows you to access any previously dialed, received or missed calls while your phone has been connected to the system. 1. Press OK to select. 2. Scroll to select from Call History Incoming, Call History Outgoing or Call History Missed. Press OK make your selection. 3. Press OK or the phone button to call the desired selection. Note: The system attempts to automatically re-download your phone book and call history each time your phone connects to SYNC (if the auto download feature is on and your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone supports this feature).

When you select:	You can:
Phonebook ^{1,2}	Allows you to access your downloaded phonebook. 1. Press OK to confirm and enter. If your phonebook has fewer than 255 listings, they appear alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more, they are organized into alphabetical categories. 2. Scroll until the desired contact appears, then press OK. 3. Press OK or the phone button.
Text Message ¹	Enables you to send, download and delete text messages.
Phone Settings ¹	Allows you to view your phone's status, set ring tones, select your message notification, change phone book entries and automatically download your cellular phone among other features.
SYNC Services ³	Access the SYNC services portal where you can request various types of information, traffic reports and directions.
911 Assist ⁴	Place an emergency call to a 911 operator for you after an accident (if the feature is used properly).
Vehicle Health Report ³	Create and receive a diagnostic report card on your vehicle.
Mobile Apps ³	Interact with SYNC®-capable mobile applications on your smartphone.
System Settings	Access Bluetooth Devices menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on/off, delete) as well as Advanced menu listings (prompts, languages, defaults, master reset, install application and system information).
Exit Phone Menu	Exit the phone menu by pressing OK.

¹This is a phone-dependent feature.

²This is a phone-dependent and speed-dependent feature.

³If equipped, U.S. only.

⁴If equipped, U.S. and Canada only.

Text Messaging

Note: This is a phone-dependent feature.

SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

Receiving a Text Message

Note: This is a phone-dependent feature. Your phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.

Note: Forwarding a text message is a speed-dependent feature and can only be done when the vehicle is traveling at 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.

Note: Only one recipient is allowed per text message.

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the display indicates you have a new message. You have these options:

1. Press the voice button, wait for the prompt and say "Read Message" to have SYNC read the message to you.
2. Press OK to receive and open the text message or do nothing and the message goes into your text message inbox. Press OK again and SYNC reads your message aloud as you are not able to view the message. You can then also choose whether you'd like to reply or forward the message.
3. Press OK and scroll to choose between:
 - Reply to Text Message: Press OK to access and then scroll through the list of pre-defined messages to send.
 - Forward Text Message: Press OK to forward the message to anyone in your Phonebook or Call History. You can also choose Enter Number.

Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

Text messaging is a phone-dependent feature. If your phone is compatible, SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages.

1. Press the phone button.
2. Scroll until Text Message appears and press OK.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Send Text Message? enables you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.

Download Unread Msgs allows you to download your unread messages (only) to SYNC. To download the messages, press OK to select. The display indicates your messages are being downloaded. When complete, SYNC takes you to your inbox.

Delete All Messages? allows you to delete current text messages from SYNC (not your phone). To delete the messages, press OK to select. The display indicates when all your text messages have been deleted and SYNC returns you to the text message menu.

Note: SYNC does not automatically download all of your unread text messages at every ignition cycle (as it does with call history and phonebook if automatic download is set to on).

Return exits the current menu when you press OK.

If you select **Send Text Message?**:

1. Press OK to select. If the system detects your phone does not support this feature, Unsupported appears in the display and SYNC returns to the main menu.
2. Scroll to cycle through the message options in the following chart.
3. Press OK when the desired selection is in the display. The system now needs to know who to send the message to.
4. Scroll to cycle through Phonebook or Call History entries. You can also select Enter Number to audibly enter a desired number.
5. Press OK to enter the desired menu and scroll to select the specific contact.
6. Press OK when the contact appears and press OK again to confirm when the system asks if you would like to send the message. Each text message is sent with the following signature: "This message was sent from my <Ford or Lincoln>".

Pre-defined text message options
Can't talk right now
Call me
Call you later
Be there in 10 minutes
Be there in 20 minutes
Yes
No
Why?
Thanks
Where R you?
I need more directions
I love you

Pre-defined text message options
Too funny
Can't wait to see you
I'm stuck in traffic

Accessing Your Phone Settings

These are phone-dependent features. Your phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ring tone, text message notification, modify your phone book and also set up automatic download.

1. Press the phone button.
2. Scroll until Phone Settings appears, then press OK.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

When you select:	You can:
Phone Status	See the provider, name, signal power, battery power and roaming status of your connected phone. Press OK to select and scroll to view the information. When done, press OK again to return to the phone status menu.
Set Ringer	Select which ring tone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's or your phone's). 1. Press OK to select and scroll to hear Ringer 1, Ringer 2, Ringer 3 and Phone Ringer. 2. Press OK to select. Note: If your phone supports in-band ringing, your phone's ringer sounds when Phone Ringer is chosen.
Message Notification	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. 1. Press OK to select and scroll between Message Notification On or Message Notification Off. 2. Press OK to select.

When you select:	You can:
Modify Phonebook	<p>Modify the contents of your phone book (i.e., add, delete, download). Press OK to select and scroll between:</p> <p>Add Contacts: Press OK to add more contacts from your phone book. Push the desired contact(s) on your phone. See your phone's user guide on how to push contacts.</p> <p>Delete Phonebook: Press OK to delete the current phone book and call history. When Delete Phonebook appears, press OK to confirm. SYNC takes you back to the Phone Settings menu.</p> <p>Download Phonebook: Press OK to select and press OK again when Confirm Download? appears.</p>
Auto Download	<p>Automatically download your phone book each time your phone connects to SYNC. Press OK to select. When Auto Download On? appears, press OK to have your phonebook automatically downloaded each time.</p> <p>Select Off to NOT download your phonebook every time your phone connects to SYNC. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your specific phone is connected to SYNC.</p> <p>Note: Downloading times are phone- and quantity-dependent.</p> <p>Note: When auto download is on, any changes, additions or deletions saved since your last download are deleted.</p>
Return	Exit the current menu.

System Settings

System Settings provide access to your Bluetooth Devices and Advanced menu features. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options.

The Bluetooth Devices menu allows you to add, connect, delete and set a phone as primary as well as turn your Bluetooth feature on and off.

The Advanced menu allows you to access and set prompts, languages, defaults, perform a master reset, install an application and view system information.

Bluetooth Devices Menu Options

This menu allows you to add, connect, delete, set a phone as primary, and turn Bluetooth on or off.

1. Press the phone button to enter the Phone Menu.
2. Scroll until System Settings appears and press OK.
3. Scroll until Bluetooth Devices appears and select OK.
4. Scroll to select from the following options:

If you select:	You can:
Add Bluetooth Device*	See <i>Using SYNC with your phone</i> earlier in this chapter for pairing instructions.
Connect Bluetooth Device	Connect a previously paired Bluetooth-enabled phone. 1. Press OK to select and view a list of previously paired phones. 2. Scroll until the desired device is chosen, then press OK to connect the phone. Note: Only one device can be connected at a time. When another phone is connected, the previous one is disconnected.
Set Primary Phone	Set a previously paired phone as your primary phone. Press OK to select and scroll to select the desired phone. Press OK to confirm. Note: SYNC attempts to connect with the primary phone at every ignition cycle. When a phone is selected as primary, it appears first in the list and is marked with an *.

If you select:	You can:
Set Bluetooth On/Off	Turn the Bluetooth feature on and off. Press OK and scroll to toggle between On and Off. When the desired selection is chosen, press OK. Note: Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all Bluetooth devices and deactivates all Bluetooth features.
Delete Device	Delete a paired phone. Press OK and scroll to select the device. Press OK to confirm.
Delete All Devices	Delete all previously paired phones (and all information originally saved with those phones). Press OK to select.
Return	Exit the current menu.

*This is a speed-dependent feature.

Advanced Menu Options

This menu allows you to access settings such as prompts, languages, defaults, perform a master reset, install an application and view system information.

1. Press the phone button to enter the Phone Menu.
2. Scroll until System Settings appears and press OK.
3. Scroll until Advanced appears and select OK.
4. Scroll to select from the following options:

If you select:	You can:
Prompts	Get help from SYNC by using questions, helpful hints or asking you for a specific action. To turn these prompts on or off: 1. Press OK to select and scroll to select between on or off. 2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display. SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.

If you select:	You can:
Languages	<p>Choose between English, Espanol and Francais. Once selected, all of SYNC's radio displays and prompts are in the selected language.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press OK to select and then scroll through the languages. 2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display. If you change the language setting, the display indicates that the system is updating. When complete, SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.
Factory Defaults	<p>Return to the factory default settings. This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press OK to select and then press OK again when Restore Defaults? appears in the display. 2. Press OK to confirm.
Master Reset	<p>Completely erase all information stored on SYNC (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to the factory default settings.</p> <p>Press OK to select. The display indicates when complete and SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.</p>
Install Application	<p>Install applications you have downloaded. Press OK and scroll to select. Press OK to confirm.</p>
System Info	<p>Access the Auto Version number as well as the FPN number.</p> <p>Press OK to select.</p>
MAP Profile	<p>This is a Bluetooth component which can further help your phone with the exchange of text messages.</p>
Return	<p>Exit the current menu.</p>

SYNC APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES (IF EQUIPPED)

Note: In order for the following features to work, your cellular phone must be compatible with SYNC. To check your phone's compatibility, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

- SYNC Services (if equipped, U.S. only): Provides access to traffic, directions and information such as travel, horoscopes, stock prices and more.
- 911 Assist®: Can alert 911 in the event of an emergency.
- Vehicle Health Report (if equipped, U.S. only): Provides a diagnostic and maintenance report card of your vehicle.

911 Assist®

WARNING: Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on prior to a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.



WARNING: Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



WARNING: Always place your phone in a secure location in the vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a collision. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

Note: SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.

Note: Before setting this feature on, ensure that you read the 911 Assist privacy notice later in this section for important information.

Note: If 911 Assist is turned on or off by any user, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is turned off, a voice message plays and/or a display message/icon comes on when the vehicle is started after a previously paired phone connects.

Note: Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.

If a crash deploys an airbag or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. For more information about 911 Assist, visit www.SYNCMYRide.com, www.SYNCMYRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

- For information on airbag deployment, see the *Supplementary Restraints System* chapter.
- For information on the fuel pump shut-off, see the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

Setting 911 Assist On

Perform the following:

1. Press the phone button to enter the Phone Menu.
2. Scroll until 911 Assist is selected.
3. Press OK to confirm and enter the 911 Assist menu.
4. Scroll to select between On and Off selections.
5. Press OK when the desired option appears in the radio display. Set On or Set Off appears in the display as confirmation.

Off selections include: Off with reminder and Off without reminder. Off with reminder provides a display and voice reminder at phone connection at vehicle start. Off without reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder at phone connection.

To make sure that 911 Assist works properly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.
- A Bluetooth-enabled and compatible phone has to be paired and connected to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (which would activate 911 Assist); however, if 911 Assist is triggered, SYNC tries to contact emergency services. If a connected phone is damaged or loses connection to SYNC, SYNC searches for, and tries to connect to, any available previously paired phone and tries to make the call to 911.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. Failure to cancel the call results in SYNC attempting to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: “SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel.”

If the call is not cancelled and a successful call is made, a pre-recorded message is played for the 911 operator, then the occupant(s) in the vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware was damaged in a crash.
- The vehicle’s battery or SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) paired and connected to the system was thrown from the vehicle.

911 Assist Privacy Notice

Once 911 Assist is set on, it may disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators the vehicle location, and/or other details about the vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not turn the feature on.

Vehicle Health Report



WARNING: Always follow scheduled maintenance instructions, regularly inspect your vehicle, and seek repair for any damage or problem you suspect. Vehicle Health Report supplements, but cannot replace normal maintenance and vehicle inspection. Vehicle Health Report only monitors certain systems that are electronically monitored by the vehicle and will not monitor or report the status of any other system, (i.e., brake lining wear). Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regularly inspect your vehicle may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

Note: Your Vehicle Health Report feature requires activation prior to use. Visit www.SYNCMYride.com to register. There is no fee or subscription associated with Vehicle Health Report, but you must register to use this feature.

Note: This feature may not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your mobile phone. Before running a report, review the *Vehicle Health Report privacy notice*.

Note: In order to allow a break-in period for your vehicle, you may not be able to create a Vehicle Health Report until your vehicle odometer has reached 200 miles.

Register for Vehicle Health Report and set your report preferences at www.SYNCMYride.com. After registering, you can request a Vehicle Health Report (inside your vehicle). Return to your account at www.SYNCMYride.com to view your report. You can also choose for SYNC to automatically remind you to run reports at specific mileage intervals. Cellular phone airtime usage may apply when reporting.

The system allows you to check your vehicle's overall health in the form of a diagnostic report card. The vehicle health report contains valuable information such as:

- Vehicle Diagnostic Information
- Scheduled maintenance
- Open Recalls and Field Service Actions
- Unserviced items from vehicle inspections by your authorized dealer.

You can run a report (after the vehicle has been running a minimum of 60 seconds) by pressing the voice button and saying "Vehicle health report", or pressing the phone button.

To run a report using the phone button:

1. Press the phone button to enter Phone Menu.
2. Scroll until Vehicle Health is selected and press OK.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Vehicle Health Report Options	
User Preferences: Press OK to select and enter the menu. Scroll to select from:	<p>Automatic Reports: Press OK and select on or off. Select On to have SYNC automatically prompt you to run a health report at certain mileage intervals. Note: You must first turn this feature on before you can select the mileage intervals at which you would like to be prompted.</p> <p>Mileage Intervals: Press OK. Scroll to select between 5000, 7500 or 10000 mile intervals and press OK to make your selection.</p> <p>Return: Press OK to exit the menu.</p>
Run Report?	Press OK for SYNC to run a health report of your vehicle's diagnostic systems and send the results to Ford where it is combined with scheduled maintenance information, open recalls and other field service actions and unserviced vehicle inspection items from your authorized dealer.

Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice

When you run a Vehicle Health Report, Ford Motor Company may collect your cellular phone number (to process your report request) and diagnostic information about your vehicle. Certain versions or updates to Vehicle Health Report may also collect additional vehicle information. Ford may use the vehicle information it collects for any purpose. If you do not want to disclose your cellular phone number or vehicle information, do not run the feature or set up your Vehicle Health Report profile at www.SYNCMYride.com. See www.SYNCMYride.com - Vehicle Health Report Terms and Conditions, and Privacy Statement - for more information.

SYNC Services: Traffic, Directions & Information (TDI)

Note: SYNC Services requires activation prior to use. Visit www.SYNCMYride.com to register and check your eligibility for complimentary services. Standard phone and message rates may apply. Subscription may be required. You must also have the active SYNC Services Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone paired and connected to the system in order to connect to, and use, SYNC Services. See *Using SYNC with your phone* for pairing instructions.

Note: This feature does not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your mobile phone. Make sure your mobile phone is not blocking caller ID before using SYNC Services.

Note: The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle, and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of errors, changes in roads, traffic conditions or driving conditions.

Note: When you connect, the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction and speed to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches you request. Further, to provide the services you request and for continuous improvement, the service may collect and record call details and voice communications. For more information, see SYNC Services Terms and Conditions at www.SYNCMYride.com. If you do not want Ford or its service providers to collect the vehicle travel information or other information identified in the Terms and Conditions, do not activate or use the service.

SYNC Services uses advanced vehicle sensors, integrated GPS technology and comprehensive map and traffic data, to give you personalized traffic reports, precise turn-by-turn directions, business search, news, sports, weather and more. For a complete list of services, or to learn more, please visit www.SYNCMYride.com.

Connecting to SYNC Services Using Voice Commands

1. Press the voice button.
2. When prompted, say “Services”. This initiates an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.
3. Once you are connected to the service, follow the voice prompts to request the desired service, such as “Traffic” or “Directions”. You can also say “What are my choices?” to receive a complete list of available services from which to choose.
4. Say “Services” to return to the services main menu or for help, say “Help”.

Connecting to SYNC Services Using the Phone Menu

1. Press the phone button to enter the Phone Menu.
2. Scroll until *Services* appears in the display.
3. Press OK to confirm and enter the Services menu. The display indicates the system is connecting.
4. Press OK. SYNC initiates the call to the Services portal.
5. Once connected, follow the voice prompts to request your desired Service, such as Traffic or Directions. You can also say “What are my choices?” to receive a complete list of available services from which to choose.
6. To return to the Services menu, say “Services” or for help, say “Help”.

Receiving Turn-by-Turn Directions

1. When connected to SYNC Services, say “Directions” or “Business search”. To find the closest business or type of business to your current location, just say “Business search” and then “Search near me”. If you need further assistance in finding a location you can say “Operator” at any time within a Directions or Business search to speak with a live operator. You may also be prompted to speak with an operator when the automatic system has difficulty matching your voice request. The live operator can assist you by searching for businesses by name or by category, residential addresses by street address or by name or specific street intersections. Operator Assist is a feature of your SYNC Services subscription. For more information on Operator Assist visit www.SYNCMyRide.com/support.
2. Follow the voice prompts to select your destination. Once your destination is selected, your current vehicle location is uploaded and a route based on current traffic conditions is calculated and sent back to your vehicle. After the route download is complete, the phone call is automatically ended. You then receive audible and visual driving instructions as you travel toward your destination.

3. While on an active route, you can select or say “Route summary” or “Route status” to view the Route Summary turn list or the Route Status ETA. You can also turn voice guidance on or off, cancel the route or update the route.

If you miss a turn, SYNC automatically asks if you want the route updated. Just say, “Yes” when prompted and a new route will be delivered to your vehicle.

Disconnecting from SYNC Services

1. Press and hold the phone button on the steering wheel.
2. Say “Good-bye” from the SYNC Services main menu.

SYNC Services Quick Tips	
Personalizing	You can personalize your Services feature to provide quicker access to your most used or favorite information. You can save address points such as work or home. You can also save favorite information like sports teams or a news category. To learn more, log onto www.SYNCMYride.com .
Push to interrupt	Press the voice button at any time (while you are connected to SYNC TDI Services) to interrupt a voice prompt or an audio clip (such as a sports report), wait for the listening tone, and say your voice command.
Portable	Your subscription is associated with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone number, not your VIN (Vehicle Identification Number). You can pair and connect your phone to any vehicle equipped with Traffic, Directions and Information and continue enjoying your personalized services. You can even access your account outside the vehicle. Just use the number on your phone’s call history. Traffic and Directions features do not function properly but information services and the 411 connect and text message features are available.

USING SYNC WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your digital music player over the vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, such as artists, albums, etc.

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player including: iPod®, Zune™, Plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats such as MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

Connecting Your Digital Media Player via the USB Port

Note: If your digital media player has a power switch, ensure that the device is turned on.

To connect using voice commands:

1. Plug the device into the vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the voice icon and when prompted, say "USB".
3. You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. See the media voice commands.

To connect using the system menu:

1. Plug the device into the vehicle's USB port.
2. Press AUX and then MENU to enter the Media Menu.
3. Scroll until Select Source appears and press OK.
4. Scroll to select USB and press OK.
5. Depending on how many digital media files are on your connected device, Indexing may appear in the radio display. When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the Play Menu.
6. Press OK and scroll through selections of:
 - Play All
 - Artists
 - Albums
 - Genres
 - Playlists
 - Tracks
 - Explore USB
 - Similar Music
 - Return

When the desired selection appears in the display, press OK to build your desired music selection.

What's Playing?



At any time when a track is playing, you can press the voice icon and ask the system, "What's playing?". The system reads the metadata tags (if populated) of the playing track to you.

Media Voice Commands



Press the voice icon and, when prompted, say "USB" then any of the following:

"USB"
"Autoplay off"
"Autoplay on"
"(Phone) (Media) (Bluetooth) Connections"
"Pause"
"Play"
"Play album <name>" ^{1,3}
"Play all"
"Play artist <name>" ^{1,3}
"Play genre <name>" ^{1,3}
"Play next folder" ²
"Play next track"
"Play playlist <name>" ^{1,3}
"Play previous folder" ²
"Play previous track"
"Play song <name>" ¹
"Play track <name>" ^{1,3}
"Refine album <name>" ^{1,3}
"Refine artist <name>" ^{1,3}
"Refine song <name>" ¹
"Refine track <name>" ^{1,3}
"Repeat off"
"Repeat on"
"Search album <name>" ^{1,3}
"Search artist <name>" ^{1,3}
"Search genre <name>" ^{1,3}

“USB”
“Search song <name>” ¹
“Search track <name>” ^{1,3}
“Shuffle off”
“Shuffle on”
“Similar music”
“What’s playing?”

¹“<name>” is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of any desired group, artist, etc.

²Voice commands which are only available in folder mode.

³Voice commands which are not available until indexing is complete.

Voice Command Guide	
“Autoplay”	Turn on to listen to music which has already been randomly indexed during the indexing process. Turn off and the system does not begin to play any of your music until all media has all been indexed. Indexing times can vary from device to device and also with regard to the number of songs being indexed.
“Search/Play Genre”	The system searches all the data from your indexed music and, if available, begins to play the chosen type of music. You can only play genres of music which are present in the GENRE metadata tags that you have on your digital media player.
“Similar Music”	The system compiles a playlist and then plays similar music to what is currently playing from the USB port using indexed metadata information.

Voice Command Guide	
“Search/Play Artist/Track/Album”	The system searches for a specific artist/track/album from the music indexed through the USB port.
“Refine”	This allows you to make your previous command more specific. For example, if you asked to search and play all music by a certain artist, you could then say “refine album” and choose a specific album from the list to view. If you then select Play, the system only plays music from that specific album.

Press the voice icon and when prompted say “Bluetooth Audio” and then any of the following:

“BLUETOOTH AUDIO”
“(Phone) (Media) (Bluetooth) Connections”
“Pause”
“Play”
“Play next track ”
“Play previous track ”

Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select your media source, how to play your music (by artist, genre, shuffle, repeat, etc.), and also to add, connect or delete devices.

1. Press AUX and then MENU to enter the Media Menu.
2. Scroll to cycle through:

When you select:	You can:
Play Menu	Play your music by artist, album, genre, playlists, tracks, similar music or to simply play all. You can also choose to Explore USB to view the supported digital music files on your playing device. See Play Menu later in this section for more information.

When you select:	You can:
Select Source	<p>SYNC USB: Press OK to access music plugged into your USB port. You can also plug in devices to charge them (if supported by your device). Once connected, the system indexes any readable media files. (The time required to complete this depends on the size of the media content being indexed.) If Autoplay is on, you can access media files randomly as they are indexed. If turned off, indexed media is not available until the indexing process is complete. SYNC is capable of indexing thousands of average size media and notifies you if the maximum indexing file size is reached.</p> <p>Bluetooth Audio: This is a phone-dependent feature which allows you to stream music playing on your Bluetooth-enabled phone. If supported by your device, you can press SEEK to play the previous or next track.</p> <p>SYNC Line In: Press OK to select and play music from your portable music player over the vehicle's speakers.</p> <p>Note: If you have already connected a device to the USB port, you cannot access the line in feature. Some digital media players require both USB and line in ports to stream data and music separately.</p>

When you select:	You can:
Media Settings	<p>Choose to shuffle or repeat your music and select your Autoplay settings. Once these selections are turned on, they remain on until turned off. Press SEEK to play the previous or next track.</p> <p>Note: Some digital media players require both USB and line in ports to stream data and music separately. Press OK to select and then scroll to choose from:</p> <p>Shuffle: Press OK to shuffle available media files in the current playlist. Note: To shuffle all media tracks, you must select Play All in the Play Menu and then select Shuffle.</p> <p>Repeat: Press OK to repeat any song.</p> <p>Autoplay: Press OK to listen to music which has already been randomly indexed during the indexing process.</p>
Mobile Apps	<p>Interact with SYNC®-capable mobile applications on your smart phone. See SYNC® <i>AppLink</i>™ earlier in this chapter for more information.</p>
System Settings	<p>Access Bluetooth Device menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on/off, delete) as well as Advanced menu listings (prompts, languages, defaults, master reset, install application and system information).</p> <p>Note: See System Settings for more information.</p>
Exit Media Menu	<p>Press OK to exit the media menu.</p>

Accessing Your Play Menu

This menu allows you to select and play your media by artist, album, genre, playlist, track, similar music or even to explore what is on your USB device.

1. Make sure that your device is plugged into the USB port and is turned on.
2. Press AUX and then MENU to enter the Media Menu.
3. Scroll to select the Play Menu and press OK.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options to scroll through and select from:

When you select:	You can:
Play All	Play all indexed media (tracks) from your playing device in flat file mode, one at a time in numerical order. Press OK to select. The first track title appears in the display.
Artists	Sort all indexed media by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then play all artists and tracks alphabetically. If there are less than 255 indexed artist, they are listed alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more, they are categorized in alphabetical categories. 1. Press OK to select. You can select to play All Artists or any indexed artist. 2. Scroll until the desired artist is chosen and press OK.

When you select:	You can:
Albums	<p>Sort all indexed media by albums. If there are less than 255 indexed albums, they are listed alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more, they are organized into alphabetical categories.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press OK to enter the album menu and select from playing all albums or from any individual indexed album. 2. Scroll until the desired album is chosen and press OK.
Genres	<p>Sort indexed music by genre (category) type. SYNC lists the genres alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, SYNC automatically organizes them into alphabetical categories.</p> <p>Press OK to select and then scroll to select the desired genre and press OK.</p>
Playlists	<p>Access your playlists (from formats such as ASX, .M3U, .WPL, .MTP.). The system lists your playlists alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, they are organized into alphabetical categories.</p> <p>Press OK to select. Then scroll to select the desired playlist and press OK.</p>
Tracks	<p>Search for and play a specific track which has been indexed. SYNC lists your tracks alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, SYNC automatically organizes them into alphabetical categories.</p> <p>Press OK to select. Then scroll to select the desired track and press OK.</p>

When you select:	You can:
Explore USB	Explore all supported digital media on your media device connected to the USB port. You can only view media content which is compatible with SYNC; other files saved are not visible. Press OK to select. Then scroll to explore indexed media on your flash drive.
Similar Music	Play music similar to what is currently playing from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each song to compile a playlist for you. Press OK to select. The system creates a new list of similar songs and begins playing. The metadata tags must be populated for this feature to include each track. Note: With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks won't be available in voice recognition, play menu or similar music. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in "Mass Storage Device Mode", they are available in voice recognition, play menu browsing and similar music. Unknowns are placed into any unpopulated metadata tag.
Return	Exit the current menu.

System Settings

System settings provide access to your Bluetooth Devices and Advanced menu features.

The Bluetooth Devices menu allows you to add, connect and delete a device as turn the Bluetooth feature on and off.

Your Advanced menu allows you to access and set prompts, languages, defaults and perform a master reset.

Bluetooth Devices Menu Options

This menu allows you to add, connect and delete devices as well as turn Bluetooth on and off.

1. Press AUX and then MENU to enter the Media Menu.
2. Scroll until System Settings appears and select OK.
3. Scroll until Bluetooth Devices appears.
4. Press OK and then scroll to select from:

When you select:	You can:
Add Bluetooth Device*	Allows you to pair additional devices to the system. 1. Press OK to select and press OK again when Find SYNC appears in the display. 2. Follow the directions in your phone's user guide to put your phone into discovery mode. A six-digit PIN appears in the display. 3. When prompted on your phone's six-digit display, enter the PIN.
Connect Bluetooth Device	Connect a previously paired Bluetooth-enabled phone. 1. Press OK to select and view a list of devices. 2. Scroll until the desired device is chosen and press OK to connect the device.
Set Bluetooth On/Off	Turn the Bluetooth feature on and off. Press OK and scroll to toggle between On and Off. When the desired selection is chosen, press OK. Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all Bluetooth devices and deactivates Bluetooth features.
Delete Device	Delete a paired media device. Press OK and scroll to select the device. Press OK to confirm.
Delete All Devices	Delete all previously paired devices. Press OK to select.
Return	Exit the current menu.

*This is a speed-dependent feature

Advanced Menu Options

This menu allows you to access settings such as prompts, language, performing a master reset as well as returning to factory defaults.

1. Press AUX and then MENU to access the Media Menu.
2. Scroll until System Settings appears and select OK.
3. Scroll until Advanced appears.
4. Press OK and then scroll to select from the following:

When you select:	You can:
Prompts	Have SYNC guide you via questions, helpful hints or ask you for a specific action. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press OK to select and scroll to select between on or off. 2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display. SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.
Languages	Choose from English, Francais and Espanol. The displays and prompts are in the selected language. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press OK to select and then scroll through the languages. 2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display. 3. If you change the language setting, the display indicates that the system is updating. When complete, SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.
Factory Defaults	Return to the factory default settings. This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press OK to select and then press OK again when Restore Defaults? appears in the display. 2. Press OK to confirm.
Master Reset	Completely erase all information stored on SYNC (all phonebook, call history, text messages and all paired devices) and return to the factory default settings.
Application	Download new software applications (if available) and then load the desired applications through your USB port. See the web site for more information.
Return	Exit the current menu.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, see the tables below.

Use the website at any time to check your phone’s compatibility, register your account and set preferences as well as access a customer representative via an online chat (during certain hours). Visit www.SYNCMYride.com, www.SYNCMYride.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca for more information.

Phone Issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
Excessive background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Review your phone’s user guide regarding audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible phone malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device’s battery, then trying again.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This is a phone-dependent feature, OR • Possible phone malfunction. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Go to the website to review your phone’s compatibility. • Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device’s battery, then trying again. • Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature. • Use the SYNCmyphone feature available on the website.

Phone Issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
The system says Phonebook Downloaded but my phonebook in SYNC is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your phone's capability.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature. • If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to the device memory. • Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.
I am having trouble connecting my phone to SYNC.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This is a phone-dependent feature, OR • Possible phone malfunction. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. • Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again. • Try deleting your device from SYNC, deleting SYNC from your device and trying again. • Check the security and auto accept/prompt always settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your phone. • Update your device's software firmware. • Turn off the Auto phonebook download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This is a phone-dependent feature, OR • Possible phone malfunction. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. • Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.

USB/Media Issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again. • Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable. • Make sure the USB cable is properly inserted into the device and the vehicle's USB port. • Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I turn on the car.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This is a phone-dependent feature, OR • The device is not connected. 	Make sure the device is connected to SYNC and that you have pressed play on your device.
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Your music files may not contain the proper artist, song title, album or genre information, OR • The file may be corrupted, OR • The song may have copyright protection which does not allow it to play. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure that all song details are populated. • Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to MTP class.

Vehicle Health Report/Services (Traffic, Directions and Information) Issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
I received a text that the Vehicle Health Report is not activated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Your account may not be activated on the website, OR You may have the wrong VIN (vehicle identification number) listed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This is a free feature, but you must first register online to use it. Make sure that your VIN is correctly listed in your account.
I am unable to retrieve the report on the website, or I receive a system error.	The preferred dealer information did not load correctly.	When you register your account, you must list a preferred dealer. If one is already listed, try selecting another dealer and logging out. Log back in and change it back to your preferred dealer and retrieve the report.
I am unable to submit a report.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This could be due to your phone's compatibility, OR Bad signal strength, OR Your phone may not be activated on the website. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Update your mobile number in your account on the website. Make sure you have full signal strength and that your <i>Bluetooth</i> volume level has been turned up. Try deleting your phone and performing a clean pairing.
I heard a commercial when I tried to use Traffic, Directions and Information.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The phone in use is not activated, OR Your phone has ID blocker active. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This is a free feature, but you must first register online to use it. Turn off ID blocker on your phone as the system recognizes you by your phone number. Make sure the currently connected phone is the same one that is registered on your SyncMyRide account.

Voice Command Issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You may be using the wrong voice commands, OR You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Review the Phone voice commands and the Media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections. Be aware that SYNC's microphone is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You may be using the wrong voice commands, OR You may not be saying the name exactly as it is saved, OR The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section. Say the song or artist exactly as listed. If you say, "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation. Make sure you are saying the complete title, such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles". If the songs are saved in all CAPS, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say, "Play L-O-L-A". Do not use special characters in the title as the system does not recognize them.

Voice Command Issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
<p>SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • You may be using the wrong voice commands, OR • You may not be saying the name exactly as it is saved, OR • Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar, or they may contain special characters, OR • Your phonebook contacts may be saved in CAPS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Review the phone voice commands at the beginning of the phone section. • Make sure you are saying the contacts exactly as listed. For example, if a contact is saved as Joe Wilson, say “Call Joe Wilson”. • The system works better if you list full names, such as “Joe Wilson” rather than “Joe”. • Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE, as the system does not recognize them. • If contacts are saved in CAPS, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say, “Call J-A-K-E”.

GENERAL INFORMATION**SYNC® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

- You have acquired a device (“DEVICE”) that includes software licensed by FORD MOTOR COMPANY from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation (“MS”). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and “online” or electronic documentation (“MS SOFTWARE”) are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and “online” or electronic documentation (“FORD SOFTWARE”) are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and “online” or electronic documentation (“THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE”) are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as “SOFTWARE.”

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (“EULA”), DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

DESCRIPTION OF OTHER RIGHTS AND LIMITATIONS:

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the

SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.

- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are

provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets," incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual

property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see <http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/>.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S.\$250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

End user notice**Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information**

This system Ford SYNC™ contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

Read and follow instructions

Before using your Windows Automotive-based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual (“User’s Guide”). Not following precautions found in this User’s Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

Keep User’s Guide in Vehicle

When kept in the vehicle, the User’s Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User’s Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.



WARNING: Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

General operation**Voice Command Control**

Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

Prolonged Views of Screen

Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

Volume Setting

Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

Use of Speech Recognition Functions

Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

Navigation Features

Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Distraction Hazard

Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

Let Your Judgment Prevail

Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

Route Safety

Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

Potential Map Inaccuracy

Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

Emergency Services

Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

-
- 911 Assist™336
- A**
- ABS (see Brakes)151
- Accessing call history/phone
book during active call325
- Accessing your media menu
features347
- Accessing your phone menu
features327
- Accessory delay87
- Active call menu options325
- Advanced menu options ...334, 354
- Advanced menu options
(prompts, languages, defaults,
master reset, installing
applications)334
- Airbag supplemental restraint
system46
and child safety seats47
description46
disposal61
driver airbag46
passenger airbag46
side airbag46, 50
- Air cleaner filter229–230, 292
- Air conditioning115
manual heating and air
conditioning system115
- Air filter, cabin117
- All Wheel Drive (AWD),
driving off road143
- Ambulance packages14
- Antifreeze
(see Engine coolant)218
- Anti-lock brake system
(see Brakes)151
- Anti-theft system
arming the system72
disarming a triggered system ..72
- Audio system
Single CD108
- Audio system (see Radio)108
- Automatic transmission141
fluid, adding223
fluid, checking223
fluid, refill capacities288
fluid, specification288
- Auxiliary input jack (Line in) ..113
- Auxiliary powerpoint124
- B**
- Battery226
acid, treating emergencies226
jumping a disabled battery190
maintenance-free226
replacement, specifications ...292
servicing226
- Blind Spot Information
System161
- Booster seats21
- Brakes150
anti-lock151
anti-lock brake system (ABS)
warning light151
brake warning light151
fluid, checking and adding225
fluid, refill capacities288
fluid, specifications288
lubricant specifications288
parking151
trailer180

C

Capacities for refilling fluids288
 Cargo management system168
 CD108
 CD player106
 Cell phone use15
 Changing a tire278
 Child safety restraints26, 29
 Child safety seats
 attaching with tether straps29
 automatic locking mode
 (retractor)36
 LATCH26
 Child safety seats -
 booster seats21
 Cleaning your vehicle243
 engine compartment245
 instrument panel247
 interior246
 plastic parts244
 washing243
 waxing245
 wheels248
 wiper blades246
 Climate control (see Air
 conditioning or Heating)115
 Clock108
 Console125
 overhead126
 Coolant218
 checking and adding218
 refill capacities288
 specifications288
 Cross Traffic Alert161
 Cruise control159
 Customer Assistance188

Ford Extended Service
 Plan295, 297
 Getting assistance outside
 the U.S. and Canada197
 Getting roadside assistance ...188
 Getting the service you
 need193
 Ordering additional owner's
 literature199
 Utilizing the
 Mediation/Arbitration
 Program197

D

Defrost115
 rear window116
 Dipstick
 automatic transmission
 fluid223
 engine oil217
 Driving under special
 conditions142, 145, 147
 sand146
 snow and ice148
 through water147, 185

E

Electronic message center97
 Electronic stability control154
 Emergencies, roadside
 jump-starting190
 running out of fuel134
 Emergency brake
 (see Parking brake)151
 Emission control system138
 End user license agreement361
 Engine287
 cleaning245

coolant	218	Fuel and distance computer	99
fail-safe cooling	222	outside temperature	
idle speed control	226	indicator	99
lubrication specifications	288	to empty indicator	99
refill capacities	288	trip distance	99
service points	215	trip/reset button	99
Engine block heater	130	Fuel - flex fuel vehicle	
Engine oil		(FFV)	132
checking and adding	217	Fuses	201–202
dipstick	217	G	
filter, specifications	292	Gas cap (see Fuel cap)	136
refill capacities	288	Gauges	92
specifications	288	odometer	99
Event data recording	11	trip odometer	99
Exhaust fumes	130	H	
F		Hazard flashers	189
Fail safe cooling	222	Headlamps	
Flexible Fuel Vehicle		aiming	231
(FFV)	132	bulb specifications	242
Floor mats	186	flash to pass	81
Fluid capacities	288	high beam	80
Four-Wheel Drive vehicles		replacing bulbs	234
driving off road	144	Head restraints	119
Fuel		Heating	115
cap	136	Hood	212
capacity	288	I	
choosing the right fuel	133	Ignition	128, 287
filler funnel	134	Illuminated visor mirror	90
filling your vehicle		Information displays	97
with fuel	136	Inspection/maintenance (I/M)	
filter, specifications	226, 292	testing	140
fuel pump shut-off	189		
octane rating	134, 287		
quality	133		
running out of fuel	134		
safety information relating to			
automotive fuels	132		

-
- Instrument panel
 cleaning247
 cluster92
- J**
- Jack278
 positioning278
 storage278
- Joining two calls
 (multiparty/conference call)325
- Jump-starting your vehicle190
- K**
- Keys65
 positions of the ignition128
- L**
- Lamps
 bulb replacement
 specifications chart242
 headlamps, flash to pass81
 interior lamps84
 replacing bulbs234
- LATCH anchors26
- Liftgate70
- Lights, warning and indicator92
- Loading instructions177
- Load limits170
- Locks
 childproof32
 doors66
- Lubricant specifications288
- Lug nuts286
- M**
- Media Bluetooth menu options
 (adding, connecting, deleting,
 turning on/off)353
- Message center97
 warning messages100
- Mirrors88, 90
 fold away88
 side view mirrors (power)88
- Motorcraft® parts243, 292
- O**
- Octane rating134
- P**
- Pairing other phones323
- Pairing your phone for the
 first time322
- Parking brake151
- Parts
 (see Motorcraft® parts)292
- Passenger Occupant
 Classification Sensor48
- Phone Bluetooth menu options
 (adding, connecting, deleting,
 turning on/off)333
- Phone redial327
- Playing music (by artist,
 album, genre, playlist, tracks,
 similar)350
- Power distribution box
 (see Fuses)202
- Power door locks66
- Power mirrors88
- Powerpoint124

Power steering	166	Safety information	318
fluid, refill capacity	288	Safety restraints	35–36, 38
fluid, specifications	288	Belt-Minder®	39
Power Windows	86	Belt-Minder®,	
Privacy information	319	deactivating/activating	41
Putting a call on/off hold	325	extension assembly	38
R		for adults	35–36
Radio	108	for children	18, 22
Single CD	108	Occupant Classification	
Radio reception	106	Sensor	48
Rear view camera display	156	safety belt maintenance	42
Rear window defroster	115	seat belt maintenance	42
Receiving a text message	329	warning light and chime	39
Recommendations for		Safety restraints -	
attaching safety restraints for		LATCH anchors	26
children	22	Safety seats for children	18, 22
Relays	201–202	Safety Compliance	
Remote entry system		Certification Label	294
illuminated entry	68–69	Satellite Radio	108
locking/unlocking doors	67	Scheduled Maintenance Guide	
opening the trunk	68	Normal Scheduled	
replacement/additional		Maintenance and Log	303
transmitters	64	Seat belts	
replacing the batteries	63	(see Safety restraints)	35
Reverse sensing system	156	Seats	122
Roadside assistance	188	child safety seats	18, 22
Roll stability control	154	front seats	120–121
Roof rack	169	second row seats	122
S		Selecting your media source	
Safety Belt Maintenance	42	(USB, Line in, BT audio)	347
Safety belts		Setting the clock	108
(see Safety restraints)	35, 38	Side air curtain	52
Safety defects, reporting	200	Side-curtain airbags system	52
		SIRIUS® satellite radio	108
		Snowplowing	14
		SOS Post Crash Alert	45

- Spark plugs,
specifications287, 292
- Special notice
 ambulance conversions14
 utility-type vehicles14
- Specification chart,
lubricants288
- Stability system154
- Starting a flex fuel vehicle129
- Starting your vehicle128–129
 jump starting190
- Steering wheel73
 controls73
 tilting73
- Supplemental Restraint System
(SRS) (see airbags)46
- SYNC® customer support318
- SYNC® Services341
- T**
- Temperature control
(see Climate control)115
- Text messaging329
- Text messaging (sending,
downloading, deleting)329, 331
- Tilt steering wheel73
- Tires255–256, 278
 alignment269
 care255
 changing278–279
 checking the pressure265
 inflating263
 label262
 police vehicles271
 replacing267
 rotating269
 safety practices268
- sidewall information258
 snow tires and chains272
 terminology257
 tire grades256
 treadwear255, 265
- Towing178, 182–183
 recreational towing183
 trailer towing178
 wrecker182
- Traction control152
- Traffic, Directions and
Information341
- Transaxle
 fluid, refill capacities288
 lubricant specifications288
- Transmission
 fluid, checking and adding
 (automatic)223
- Trunk69, 71
 remote release68
- Turn signal83
- U**
- USB port114
- Using privacy mode325
- V**
- Vehicle health report339
- Vehicle Identification Number
(VIN)293
- Vehicle loading170
- Ventilating your vehicle130
- Voice commands in media
mode345
- Voice commands in phone
mode323

W	rear wiper/washer .....78
Warning lights (see Lights) .....92	Windshield washer fluid and
Washer fluid .....226	wipers .....77
Water, Driving through .....185	checking and adding fluid ....226
Windows	replacing wiper blades ...228–229
power .....86	Wrecker towing .....182